



*Florida Department of Transportation*

RON DESANTIS  
GOVERNOR

605 Suwannee Street  
Tallahassee, FL 32399-0450

JARED W. PERDUE, P.E.  
SECRETARY

October 3, 2022

Khoa Nguyen  
Director, Office of Technical Services  
Federal Highway Administration  
3500 Financial Plaza, Suite 400  
Tallahassee, Florida 32312

Re: State Specifications Office  
Section: **SP4550000DB**  
Proposed Specification: **SP4550000DB Structures Foundations (Design Build).**

Dear Mr. Nguyen:

We are submitting, for your approval, two copies of the above referenced Special Provision.

The changes are proposed by Juan Castellanos from the State Construction Office to ensure H piling are backfilled and do not have lateral stability. Changes to the drilled shaft specifications are necessary to improve the accuracy of the thermal testing results. This will improve safety to our structures by ensuring stability of H piles and integrity of drilled shafts for bridges. These changes are associated with Section 455 of the Standard Specifications.

Please review and transmit your comments, if any, within two weeks. Comments should be sent via email [daniel.strickland@dot.state.fl.us](mailto:daniel.strickland@dot.state.fl.us).

If you have any questions relating to this specification change, please call me at (850) 414-4130.

Sincerely,

Signature on file

Daniel Strickland, P.E.  
State Specifications Engineer

DS/ra

Attachment

cc: Florida Transportation Builders' Assoc.  
State Construction Engineer

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

**STRUCTURES FOUNDATIONS (DESIGN BUILD).**

(REV ~~12-22-96-2915-2221~~) (FA ~~1-25-22~~) (~~FY 2023-247-232~~)

SECTION 455 is deleted and the following substituted:

**SECTION 455  
STRUCTURES FOUNDATIONS**

**Index**

**A. General..... 455-1 through 455-2**  
**B. Piling..... 455-3 through 455-12**  
**C. Drilled Shafts..... 455-13 through 455-24**  
**D. Spread Footings..... 455-25 through 455-37**  
**E. Structures (Other Than Bridge) Foundations-**  
**Auger Cast Piles..... 455-38 through 455-50**

**A. GENERAL**

**455-1 General Requirement.**

The Contractor may examine available soil samples and/or rock cores obtained during the preliminary soil boring operations at the appropriate District Materials Office or designated storage location.

**455-1.1 Monitor Existing Structures:** Monitor existing structures in accordance with Section 108.

**455-1.2 Excavation:** Complete all excavation of the foundations prior to installing piles or shafts unless otherwise authorized by the Engineer. After completing pile/shaft installation, remove all loose and displaced materials from around the piles/shafts, leaving a clean, solid surface. Compact the soil surface on which concrete is to be placed or which will support the forming system for the concrete to support the load of the plastic concrete without settling or causing the concrete to crack, or as shown in the Contract Documents.

**455-1.2.1 Abutment (End Bent) Fill:** Place and compact the fill before installing end-bent piling/shafts, except when driving specified test piling in end bents or when the Plans show uncased piles through proprietary retaining wall fills.

When installing piles/shafts or casing prior to placing fill, take necessary precautions to prevent displacement of piles/shafts during placing and compacting fill materials within 15 feet of the piles/shafts or casing. Reference and check the position of the piles/shafts or casing at three approximately equal intervals during construction of the embankment.

Place embankment material in 6 inch compacted lifts in the 15 foot area around the piles/shafts or casing. Compact embankment material within the 15 foot area adjacent to the piles/shafts or casing to the required density with compaction equipment weighing less than 1,000 pounds. When installing piles/shafts prior to the completion of the surrounding fills, do not cap them until placing the fills as near to final grade as possible, leaving only the necessary working room for construction of the caps.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

When shown in the Plans, provide permanent casings installed prior to placement of the fill, for all drilled shafts through mechanically stabilized fills (for example, behind proprietary retaining walls) for shafts installed after fill placement. Install temporary casings through the completed conventional fill when permanent casings are not required.

Provide permanent casings, if required, before the fill is placed extending a sufficient distance into the existing ground to provide stability to the casings during construction of the abutment fill.

**455-1.3 Cofferdams:** Construct cofferdams as detailed in the Plans. When cofferdams are not detailed in the Plans, employ a qualified Specialty Engineer to design cofferdams, and to sign and seal the plans and specification requirements. Send the designs to the Engineer for his records before beginning construction.

Provide a qualified diver and a safety diver to inspect the conditions of the foundation enclosure or cofferdam when the Contract Documents require a seal for construction. Equip these divers with suitable voice communications, and have them inspect the foundation enclosure and cofferdam periphery including each sheeting indentation and around each piling or drilled shaft to ensure that no layers of mud or other undesirable materials were left above the bottom of seal elevation during the excavation process. Also have the divers check to make sure the surfaces of the piles or drilled shafts are sufficiently clean to allow bond of the concrete down to the minimum bottom of seal elevation. Ensure that there are no mounds of stone, shell, or unapproved backfill material left after placement and grading. Ensure that the seal is placed as specified and evaluate the adequacy of the foundation soils or rock. Correct any deficiencies found by the divers. Upon completion of inspection by the divers, the Department may also elect to inspect the work before authorizing the Contractor to proceed with subsequent construction operations. Submit a written report by the divers to the Engineer indicating the results of their underwater inspection before requesting authorization to place the seal concrete.

**455-1.4 Vibrations on Freshly Placed Concrete (Drilled Shafts and Piers):** Ensure that freshly placed concrete is not subjected to peak particle velocities greater than 1.5 inches per second from vibration sources located within 30 feet (from the nearest outside edge of freshly placed concrete to the vibration source) until that concrete has attained its final set as defined by ASTM C403 except as required to remove temporary casings before the drilled shaft elapsed time has expired.

## **455-2 Static Compression Load Tests.**

**455-2.1 General:** Employ a professional testing laboratory, or Specialty Engineer with prior load test experience on at least three projects, to conduct the load test in compliance with these Specifications, to record all data, and to submit signed and sealed reports of the test results to the Engineer.

Perform the load test by applying a load up to the load required in the Contract Documents or to the failure load, whichever occurs first.

Do not apply test loads to piles sooner than 48 hours (or the time interval shown in the Plans) after driving of the test pile or reaction piles, whichever occurs last.

Do not begin static load testing of drilled shafts until the concrete has attained a compressive strength of 3,400 psi. The Contractor may use high early strength concrete to obtain this strength at an earlier time to prevent testing delays.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

Provide all equipment, materials, labor, and personnel required to conduct the load tests, including determination of anchor reaction member depths. In this case, provide a loading apparatus designed to accommodate the maximum load plus an adequate safety factor.

While performing the load test, provide safety equipment, and employ safety procedures consistent with the latest approved practices for this work. Include with these safety procedures, adequate support for the load test plates and jack to prevent them from falling in the event of a release of load due to hydraulic failure, test pile/shaft failure, or any other cause.

**455-2.2 Loading Apparatus:** Provide an apparatus for applying the vertical loads as described in one of the following:

1. As shown and described in the Contract Documents.
2. As supplied by the Contractor, one of the following devices designed to accommodate a load at least 20% higher than the test load shown in the Plans or described herein for test loads:

- a. **Load Applied by Hydraulic Jack Acting Against Weighted Box or Platform:** Construct a test box or test platform, resting on a suitable support, over the pile, and load it with material with a total weight greater than the anticipated maximum test load. Locate supports for the weighted box or platform at least 6 feet or three pile/shaft diameters, whichever is greater, measured from the edge of the pile or shaft to the edge of the supports. Insert a hydraulic jack with pressure gauge between the test pile or shaft and the underside of the reaction beam, and apply the load to the pile or shaft by operating the jack between the reaction beam and the top of the pile or shaft.

- b. **Load Applied to the Test Pile or Shaft by Hydraulic Jack Acting Against Anchored Reaction Member:** Construct reaction member anchorages in accordance with article 6.3 of ASTM D1143. Attach a girder(s) of sufficient strength to act as a reaction beam to the upper ends of the anchor piles or shafts. Insert a hydraulic jack with pressure gauges between the head of the test pile/shaft and the underside of the reaction beam, and apply the test load to the pile/shaft by operating the jack between the reaction beam and the pile/shaft head.

If using drilled shafts with bells as reaction member anchorages, locate the top of the bell of any reaction shaft anchorage at least three shaft diameters below the bottom of the test shaft.

- c. **Combination Devices:** The Contractor may use a combination of devices (a) and (b), as described above, to apply the test load to the pile or shaft.

- d. **Other systems proposed by the Contractor and accepted by the Engineer:** When necessary, provide horizontal supports for loading the pile/shaft, and space them so that the ratio of the unsupported length to the minimum radius of gyration of the pile does not exceed 120 for steel piles, and the unsupported length to the least cross-section dimension does not exceed 20 for concrete piles or drilled shafts. Ensure that horizontal supports provide full support without restraining the vertical movement of the pile/shaft in any way.

When required by the Contract Documents, apply a horizontal load to the pile/shaft either separately or in conjunction with the vertical load. Apply the load to the test pile/shaft by hydraulic jacks, jacking against Contractor provided reaction devices. After receiving the Engineer's acceptance of the proposed method of load application, apply the horizontal load in increments, and relieve it in decrements as required by the Contract Documents.

#### **455-2.2.1 Modified Quick Test:**

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

1. Loading Procedure: Apply vertical loads concentric with the longitudinal axis of the tested pile/shaft to accurately determine and control the load acting on the pile/shaft at any time. Place the load on the pile/shaft continuously, in increments equal to approximately 5% of the maximum test load specified until approaching the failure load, as indicated by the measuring apparatus and/or instruments. Then, apply increments of approximately 2.5% until the pile/shaft “plunges” or attains the limiting load. The Specialty Engineer may elect to stop the loading increments when the pile/shaft has met the failure criteria or when a settlement equal to 10% of the pile/shaft width or diameter is reached. Apply each load increment immediately after taking and verifying the complete set of readings from all gauges and instruments. Apply each increment of load within the minimum length of time practical, and immediately take the readings. Complete the addition of a load increment and the completion of the readings within 5 to 15 minutes. Hold the maximum applied load for one hour.

Remove the load in decrements of about 10% of the maximum test load. Remove each decrement of load within the minimum length of time practical, and immediately take the readings. Complete the removal of a load decrement and the taking of the readings within 5 to 15 minutes. The Engineer may also require up to two reloading cycles with five loading increments and three unloading decrements. Record the final recovery of the pile/shaft until movement is essentially complete for a period of one hour after the last unload interval.

2. Failure Criteria and Nominal Resistance: Use the criteria described herein to establish the failure load. The failure load is defined as the load that causes a pile/shaft top deflection equal to the calculated elastic compression plus 0.15 inches plus 1/120 of the pile/shaft minimum width or the diameter in inches for piles/shafts 24 inches or less in width, and equal to the calculated elastic compression plus 1/30 of the pile/shaft minimum width or diameter for piles/shafts greater than 24 inches in width. Consider the nominal resistance of any pile/shaft so tested as either the maximum applied load or the failure load, whichever is smaller.

**455-2.3 Measuring Apparatus:** Provide an apparatus for measuring movement of the test piles/shafts that consists of all of the following devices:

1. Wire Line and Scale: Stretch a wire between two secure supports located at a distance at least:
  - a. 10 feet from the center of the test pile but not less than 3.5 times the pile diameter or width.
  - b. 12 feet from the centerline of the shaft to be tested but not less than three shaft diameters.

Locate the wire supports as far as practical from reaction beam anchorages. At over-water test sites, the Contractor may attach the wire line to the sides of the service platform. Mount the wire with a pulley on one support and a weight at the end of the wire to provide constant tension on the wire. Ensure that the wire passes across the face of a scale mounted on a mirror attached to the test pile/shaft so that readings can be made directly from the scale. Use the scale readings as a check on an average of the dial readings. When measuring both horizontal and vertical movement, mount separate wires to indicate each movement, horizontal or vertical. Measure horizontal movements from two reference wires set normal to each other in a horizontal.

2. Wooden Reference Beams and Dial Gauges: Attach wooden reference beams as detailed in the Plans and accepted by the Engineer to independent supports. For piles, install the independent supports at the greater of 3.5 times the pile diameter or width or 10 feet from the centerline of the test pile. For drilled shafts, install independent supports at the greater of three

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

shaft diameters or 12 feet from the centerline of the shaft to be tested. Locate the reference beam supports as far as practical from reaction beam anchorages. For over-water test sites, the Contractor may attach the reference beams between two diagonal platform supports. Attach dial gauges, with their stems resting either on the top of the pile/shaft or on lugs or similar reference points on the pile/shaft, to the fixed beams to record the movement of the pile/shaft head. Ensure that the area on the pile/shaft or lug on which the stem bears is a smooth surface which will not cause irregularities in the dial readings.

Provide a minimum of four dial gauges, each with 0.001 inch divisions and with 2 inch minimum travel, placed at 90 degree intervals for measuring vertical or horizontal movement.

3. Survey Level: As a check on the dial gauges, determine the elevation of a point near the top of the test pile/shaft (on plan datum) by survey level at each load and unload interval during the load test. Unless accepted otherwise by the Engineer, level survey precision is 0.001 foot. Alternately, the surveyor may read an engineer's 50 scale attached near the pile/shaft head. Determine the first elevation before applying the first load increment; make intermediate readings immediately before a load increment or an unload decrement, and after the final unload decrement that completely removes the load. Make a final reading at the time of the last recovery reading.

For over-water test sites, when shown in the Plans or directed by the Engineer, the Contractor shall, drive an H pile through a 36 inch casing to provide a stable support for the level and to protect it against wave action interfering with level measurements. Provide a suitable movable jig for the surveyor to stand. Use a jig that has a minimum of three legs, has a work platform providing at least 4 feet width of work area around the casing, and is accepted by the Engineer before use. The described work platform may be supported by the protective casing when accepted by the Engineer.

#### **455-2.4 Load Test Instrumentation:**

1. General: The intent of the load test instrumentation is to measure the test load on top of the pile/shaft and its distribution between side friction and end bearing to provide evaluation of the preliminary design calculations and settlement estimates and to provide information for final pile/shaft length design. Ensure that the instrumentation is as described in the Contract Documents.

Supply 110 V, 60 Hz, 30 A of AC electric power in accordance with the National Electric Code (NEC) to each test pile/shaft site during the installation of the instrumentation, during the load testing, and during any instrumented set-checks/redrives.

Place all of the internal instrumentation on the rebar cage before installation in the test shaft. Construct the rebar cage at least two days before it is required for construction of the test shaft. Successfully demonstrate the lifting and handling procedures before installing the instrumentation. Place the instrumented rebar cage in one segment without causing damage to the instrumentation.

2. Hydraulic Jack and Load Cell: Provide hydraulic jack(s) of adequate size to deliver the required test load to the pile/shaft unless shown otherwise in the Plans. Before load testing begins, submit a certificate from a reputable testing laboratory showing a calibration of gauge readings for all stages of jack loading and unloading for jacks provided. Ensure that the jack has been calibrated within the preceding six months. Ensure that the accuracy of the gauge is within 5% of the true load.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

Provide an adequate load cell accepted by the Engineer that has been calibrated within the preceding six months. Provide an approved electrical readout device for the load cell. Submit a certificate from an independent laboratory showing a calibration of readings for all stages of loading and unloading for load cells furnished by the Contractor and obtain the approval of the Engineer before beginning load testing. Ensure that the accuracy of the load cell is within 1% of the true load.

3. Telltales: When shown in the Contract Documents, install telltales that consist of an unstressed steel rod, greased for reducing friction and corrosion, with appropriate clearance inside a constant-diameter pipe that rests on a flat plate attached to the end of the pipe at the point of interest shown in the Plans. Construct telltales in accordance with the Contract Documents. Install dial gauges reading to 0.001 inch with 1 inch minimum travel as directed by the Specialty Engineer to measure the movement of the telltale with respect to the top of the pile/shaft.

4. Embedded Strain Gauges: Install strain gauges in the test shaft to measure the distribution of the load. Ensure that the type, number, and location of the strain gauges are as shown in the Plans or as directed by the Geotechnical Foundation Design Engineer of Record (GFDEOR). Use strain gauges that are waterproof and have suitable shielded cable that is unspliced within the shaft. In drilled shafts provide sufficient instrumentation to determine side friction components in segments no longer than 5 feet and the end bearing component.

5. Caliper: Provide a caliper tool or system to measure accurately and continuously the shape of test shafts prior to placing concrete.

**455-2.5 Support Facilities:** Furnish adequate facilities for making load and settlement readings 24 hours per day. Provide such facilities for the instrumented area, and include lighting and shelter from rain, wind, and direct sunlight.

**455-2.6 Load Test Personnel Furnished by the Contractor:** Provide a certified welder, together with necessary cutting and welding equipment, to assist with the load test setup and to make any necessary adjustments during the load test. Provide personnel to operate the jack, generators, and lighting equipment, and also provide one person with transportation to assist as required during load test setup and conducting of the load tests. Provide qualified personnel, to read the dial gauges, take level measurements, and conduct the load test under the direct supervision of the Specialty Engineer.

**455-2.7 Cooperation by the Contractor:** Cooperate with the Department, and ensure that the Department has access to all facilities necessary for observation of the conduct and the results of the test.

**455-2.8 Required Reports:** Submit a static load test report signed and sealed by the Specialty Engineer to the Engineer for review and acceptance, at least three working days, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, prior to beginning production pile/shaft construction. Include in the report of the load test the following information:

1. A tabulation of the time of, and the amount of, the load and settlement readings, and the load and recovery readings taken during the loading and unloading of the pile/shaft.

2. A graphic representation of the test results, during loading and unloading of pile/shaft top movement as measured by the average of the dial gauge readings, from wireline readings and from level readings.

3. A graphic representation of the test results, when using telltales, showing pile/shaft compression and pile/shaft tip movement.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

4. The estimated failure and safe loads according to the criteria described herein.
5. The derived side friction component for each pile/shaft segment, and end bearing component. Include all pertinent test data, analysis and charts used to determine these values.
6. Remarks concerning any unusual occurrences during the loading of the pile/shaft.
7. The names of those making the required observations of the results of the load test, the weather conditions prevailing during the load test, and the effect of weather conditions on the load test.
8. All supporting data including jack and load cell calibrations and certificates and other equipment requiring calibration.
9. All data taken during the load test together with instrument calibration certifications. In addition, submit a report showing an analysis of the results of axial load and lateral load tests in which soil resistance along and against the pile/shaft is reported as a function of deflection.
10. For drilled shafts, include all cross-hole sonic logging results, gamma-gamma density logging results, the results of other integrity tests, caliper measurements data and the pilot holes reports of core borings. Attach this report to the final authorized tip elevations letter in accordance with 455-15.6.
11. For piles, include pile driving records, and dynamic testing data and analysis.
12. Submit a signed & sealed letter to the Department confirming the design assumptions were verified by the load tests before proceeding with production foundation construction.

**455-2.9 Disposition of Loading Material:** Remove all equipment and materials, which remains the Contractor's property, from the site. Clean up and restore the site to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

**455-2.10 Disposition of Tested Piles/Shafts:** After completing testing, cut off the tested piles/shafts, which are not to be incorporated into the final structure, and any reaction piles/shafts at an elevation 24 inches below the finished graded surface. Take ownership of the cut-offs and provide areas for their disposal.

## B. PILING

### **455-3 General.**

Furnish and install concrete, steel, or wood piling including driving, jetting, preformed pile holes, cutting off, splicing, dynamic load testing, and static load testing of piling. Prior to driving, clearly mark the piles to facilitate inspection. Provide individual straight-line marks at 1-ft intervals numbered at least every 5 ft. Use markers or lumber crayons or paint marks that can be easily observed by the inspector. Ensure marks are spaced uniformly and perpendicular to the face of the pile. Face pile so that the pile markings are easily visible to the pile inspector. Provide inch marks as needed when set checks or practical refusal checks are required.

In the event a pile is broken or otherwise damaged by the Contractor to the extent that the damage is irreparable, in the opinion of the Engineer, the Contractor shall extract and replace the pile at no additional expense to the Department. In the event that a pile is mislocated by the



Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

Contractor, the Contractor shall extract and replace the pile, at no expense to the Department, except when a design change proposed by the Contractor is approved by the Department as provided in 455-5.16.5.

**455-4 Classification.**

The Department classifies piling as follows:

1. Treated timber piling.
2. Prestressed concrete piling.
3. Steel piling.
4. Test piling.
5. Sheet piling.
  - a. Concrete sheet piling.
  - b. Steel sheet piling.
6. Polymeric Piles (see Section 471 for requirements).

**455-5 General Construction Requirements.**

**455-5.1 Predrilling of Pile Holes:** Predrilled pile holes are either starter holes to the depth described in this Subarticle or holes drilled through embankment/fill material down to the natural ground at no additional cost to the Department. When using low displacement steel piling such as structural shapes, drive them through the compacted fill without the necessity of drilling holes through the fill except when the requirements for predrilling are shown in the Plans. When using concrete or other high displacement piles, drill pile holes through fill, new or existing, to at least the elevation of the natural ground. Use the range of drill diameters listed below for square concrete piles.

12 inch square piles .....	15 to 17 inches
14 inch square piles .....	18 to 20 inches
18 inch square piles .....	22 to 26 inches
20 inch square piles .....	24 to 29 inches
24 inch square piles .....	30 to 34 inches
30 inch square piles .....	36 to 43 inches

For other pile sizes, use the diameter of the drills shown in the Plans or accepted by the Engineer. Accurately drill the pile holes with the hole centered over the Plan location of the piling. Maintain the location and vertical alignment within the tolerances allowed for the piling.

For predrilled holes required through rock or other hard (i.e. debris, obstructions, etc.) materials that may damage the pile during installation, predrill hole diameters approximately 2 inches larger than the largest dimension across the pile cross-section. Fill the annular space around the piles as described in 455-5.10.1 with clean A-3 sand or sand meeting the requirements of 902-3.3.

In the setting of permanent and test piling, the Contractor may initially predrill holes to a depth up to 20% of the test pile length, unless required otherwise by the Engineer or the plans. Predrill holes for production piles in the same manner as the test piles. When installing piles in compacted fill, predrill the holes to the elevation of the natural ground. With prior written authorization from the Engineer, the Contractor may predrill holes to greater depths to

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

minimize the effects of vibrations on existing structures adjacent to the work or for other reasons the Contractor proposes.

**455-5.2 Underwater Driving:** Underwater driving is defined as any driving through water which is above the pile head at the time of driving.

When conducting underwater driving, provide a diver equipped with voice communications to aid in placing the hammer back on the pile for required cushion changes or for subsequent re-driving, to attach or recover instrumentation, to inspect the condition of the pile, or for other assistance as required.

Select one of the following methods for underwater driving:

1. Accomplish underwater driving using conventional driving equipment and piling longer than authorized so that the piling will extend above the water surface during final driving. When choosing this option, furnish a pile hammer that satisfies the requirements of this Section for use with the longer pile.

2. Accomplish underwater driving using an underwater hammer that meets the requirements of this Section and is accepted by the Engineer. When choosing this option, provide at least one pile longer than authorized at each pile group, extending above the water surface at final driving. At each group location, drive the longer pile first. Evaluate the adequacy of the underwater driving system. Use the pile tip elevation of the longer pile to evaluate the acceptability of the piles driven with the underwater hammer.

3. Accomplish underwater driving using conventional driving equipment with a suitable pile follower. When choosing this option, provide at least one pile longer than required at each pile group, extending above the water surface at final driving. At each group location, drive the full length pile first without using the follower. Perform a dynamic load test on the first pile driven with the follower in each group. Use the pile tip elevation of the longer pile to evaluate the acceptability of the piles driven with the follower.

Prior to use, submit details of the follower to the Engineer along with the information required in 455-10. Include the weight, cross-section details, stiffness, type of materials, and dimensions of the follower.

**455-5.3 Pile Hammers:** All equipment is subject to satisfactory field performance during and without dynamic testing. Use a variable energy hammer to drive concrete piles. Hammers will be rated based on the theoretical energy of the ram at impact. Supply driving equipment which provides the required normal bearing resistance at a blow count ranging from 3 blows per inch (36 blows per foot) to 10 blows per inch (120 blows per foot) at the end of initial drive, and capable of driving the piles to a resistance equal to at least 1.25 times the nominal bearing resistance, without overstressing the piling in compression or tension and without reaching practical refusal, as defined in 455-5.11.3. When requested, submit to the Engineer all technical specifications and operating instructions related to hammer equipment.

**455-5.3.1 Air/steam:** Variable energy air/steam hammers shall be capable of providing at least two ram stroke lengths. The short ram stroke length shall be approximately half of the full stroke for hammers with strokes up to 4 feet and no more than 2 feet for hammers with maximum strokes lengths over 4 feet. Operate and maintain air/steam hammers within the manufacturer's specified ranges. Use a plant and equipment for steam and air hammers with sufficient capacity to maintain, under working conditions, the hammer, volume and pressure specified by the manufacturer. Equip the plant and equipment with accurate pressure gauges which are easily accessible. Drive piles with air/steam hammers operating within 10% of the manufacturer's rated speed in blows per minute. Provide and maintain in working order for the

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

Engineer's use an approved device to automatically determine and display the blows per minute of the hammer.

**455-5.3.2 Diesel:** Variable energy diesel hammers shall have at least three fuel settings that will produce reduced strokes. Operate and maintain diesel hammers within the manufacturer's specified ranges. Determine the rated energy of diesel hammers using measured ram stroke length multiplied by the weight of the ram for open end hammers and by methods recommended by the manufacturer for closed end hammers.

Provide and maintain in working order an approved device to automatically determine and display ram stroke for open-end diesel hammers.

Equip closed-end (double acting) diesel hammers with a bounce chamber pressure gauge, in good working order, mounted near ground level so it can be easily read. Also, submit to the Engineer a chart, calibrated to actual hammer performance within 30 days prior to initial use, equating bounce chamber pressure to either equivalent energy or stroke for the closed-end diesel hammer to be used.

**455-5.3.3 Hydraulic:** Variable energy hydraulic hammers shall have at least three hydraulic control settings that provide for predictable energy or equivalent ram stroke. The shortest stroke shall be a maximum of 2 feet for the driving of concrete piles. The remaining strokes shall include full stroke and approximately halfway between minimum and maximum stroke.

Supply hammer instrumentation with electronic read out, and control unit that allows the inspector and Engineer to monitor, and the operator to read and adjust the hammer energy or equivalent ram stroke. When pressure measuring equipment is required to determine hammer energy, calibrate the pressure measuring equipment before use.

**455-5.3.4 Vibratory:** Vibratory hammers of sufficient capacity (force and amplitude) may be used to drive steel sheet piles and, with acceptance of the Engineer, to drive steel bearing piles a sufficient distance to get the impact hammer on the pile (to stick the pile). The Geotechnical Foundation Design Engineer of Record will determine the allowable depth of driving using the vibratory hammer based on site conditions. However, in all cases, use a power impact hammer for the last 15 feet or more of the final driving of steel bearing piles for bearing determinations after all piles in the bent/pier have been driven with a vibratory hammer. Do not use vibratory hammers to install concrete piles, or to install support or reaction piles for a load test.

#### **455-5.4 Cushions and Pile Helmet:**

**455-5.4.1 Capblock:** Provide a capblock (also called the hammer cushion) as recommended by the hammer manufacturer. Use commercially manufactured capblocks constructed of durable manmade materials with uniform known properties. Do not use wood chips, wood blocks, rope, or other material which permit excessive loss of hammer energy. Do not use capblocks constructed of asbestos materials. Obtain the Engineer's acceptance for all proposed capblock materials and proposed thickness for use. Maintain capblocks in good condition, and replace them when charred, melted, or otherwise significantly deteriorated. Inspect the capblock before driving begins and weekly or at appropriate intervals based on field trial. Replace or repair any capblock which loses more than 25% of its original thickness, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, before permitting further driving.

**455-5.4.2 Pile Cushion:** Provide a pile cushion that is adequate to protect the pile from being overstressed in compression and tension during driving. Use a pile cushion sized so that it will fully fill the lateral dimensions of the pile helmet minus one inch but does not cover

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

any void or hole extending through the top of the pile. Determine the thickness based upon the hammer-pile-soil system. For driving concrete piles, use a pile cushion made from pine plywood or oak lumber. Do not use materials previously soaked, saturated or treated with oil. Maintain pile cushions in good condition and replace them when charred, splintered, excessively compressed, or otherwise deteriorated to the point it will not protect the pile against overstressing in tension or compression. Protect cushions from the weather, and keep them dry. Do not soak the cushions in any liquid. Provide a new cushion for each pile unless approved otherwise by the Engineer after satisfactory field trial during dynamic testing.

During dynamic load tests, replace the pile cushion when any of the pile stress measurements exceed the maximum allowed pile stress determined by 455-5.12.2. When driving a pile without dynamic testing, replace the pile cushion when the cushion is either compressed more than one-half the original thickness, begins to burn, or as directed by the Engineer after field performance.

Reuse pile cushions in good condition to perform all set-checks and redrives. Use the same cushion to perform the set-check or redrive as was used during the initial driving, unless this cushion is unacceptable due to deterioration, in which case use a similar cushion.

**455-5.4.3 Pile Helmet:** Provide a pile helmet suitable for the type and size of piling being driven. Use a pile helmet deep enough to adequately contain the required thickness of pile cushion and to assist in maintaining pile-hammer alignment. Use a pile helmet that fits loosely over the pile head and is at least 1 inch larger than the pile dimensions. Use a pile helmet designed so that it will not restrain the pile from rotating.

**455-5.5 Leads:** Provide pile leads constructed in a manner which offers freedom of movement to the hammer and that have the strength and rigidity to hold the hammer and pile in the correct position and alignment during driving. When using followers, use leads that are long enough and suitable to maintain position and alignment of the hammer, follower, and pile throughout driving.

**455-5.6 Followers:** When driving using followers, perform dynamic load testing as per 455-5.14. Obtain the Engineer's acceptance for the type of follower, when used, and the method of connection to the leads and pile. Use followers constructed of steel with an adequate cross-section to withstand driving stresses. When driving concrete piles, ensure that the cross-sectional area of the follower is at least 18% of the cross-sectional area of the pile. When driving steel piles, ensure that the cross-sectional area of the follower is greater than or equal to the cross-sectional area of the pile. Provide a pile helmet at the lower end of the follower sized according to the requirements of 455-5.4.3. Use followers constructed that maintain the alignment of the pile, follower, and hammer and still allow the pile to be driven within the allowable tolerances. Use followers designed with guides adapted to the leads that maintain the hammer, follower, and the piles in alignment.

Use information from dynamic load tests described in 455-5.14 to evaluate the adequacy of the follower and to determine pile capacity.

**455-5.7 Templates and Ground Elevations:** Provide a fixed template, adequate to maintain the pile in proper position and alignment during driving with swinging leads or with semi-fixed leads. The Engineer may allow the use of templates attached to a barge if the Contractor demonstrates satisfactorily that the pile alignment, and the elevation and horizontal position of the template can be maintained during all pile driving operations. Where practical,

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

place the template so that the pile can be driven to cut-off elevation before removing the template. Ensure that templates do not restrict the vertical movement of the pile.

Supply a stable reference close to the pile, which is satisfactory in the opinion of the Engineer, for determination of the pile penetration. At the time of driving piles, obtain and record elevations of the original ground and template at each pile or pile group location. Note the highest and lowest elevation at each required location and the ground elevation at all piles.

**455-5.8 Water Jets:** Use jet pumps, supply lines, and jet pipes that provide adequate pressure and volume of water to freely erode the soil. Do not perform jetting without prior approval by the Engineer.

Do not perform jetting in the embankment or for end bents. Where conditions warrant, with approval by the GFDEOR, perform jetting on the holes first, place the pile therein, then drive the pile to secure the last few feet of penetration. Only use one jet for prejetting or jetting through piles constructed with a center jet-hole. Use two jets when using external jets. When jetting and driving, position the jets slightly behind the advancing pile tip (approximately 3 feet or as approved by the GFDEOR). When using water jets in the driving, determine the pile bearing only from the results of driving after withdrawing the jets, except where using jets to continuously eliminate soil resistance through the scour zone, ensure that they remain in place as directed by the GFDEOR and operating during pile bearing determination. Where practical, perform jetting on all piles in a pile group before driving begins. When large pile groups or pile spacing and batter make this impractical, or when the Plans specify a jet-drive sequence, set check a sufficient number of previously driven piles in a pile group to confirm their capacity after completing all jetting.

**455-5.9 Penetration Requirements:** Measure the penetration of piles from the elevation of the natural ground, the existing surface, the deepest scour elevation shown in the Pile Data Table, or the bottom of excavation, whichever is lowest. When the Contract Documents show a minimum pile tip elevation, drive the tip of the pile to this minimum elevation. The Engineer will accept the bearing of a pile only if the Contractor achieves the required bearing when the tip of the pile is at or below the specified minimum tip elevation and below the bottom of the preformed or predrilled pile hole.

When the Plans do not show a minimum tip elevation, ensure that the penetration is at least 10 feet into firm bearing material or at least 20 feet into soft material unless otherwise permitted by the Engineer. The Engineer may accept a penetration between 15 feet and 20 feet when there is an accumulation of five consecutive feet or more of firm bearing material. Firm bearing material is any material offering a driving resistance greater than or equal to 30 tons per square foot of gross pile area as determined by the Dynamic Load Testing (455-5.12.4). Soft material is any material offering less than these resistances. The gross pile area is the actual pile tip cross-sectional area for solid concrete piles, the product of the width and depth for H piles, and the area within the outside perimeter for pipe piles and voided concrete piles.

Do not drive piles beyond practical refusal. To meet the requirements in this Subarticle, provide penetration aids, such as jetting or preformed pile holes, when piles cannot be driven to the required penetration without reaching practical refusal.

**455-5.10 Preformed Pile Holes:**

**455-5.10.1 Description:** Preformed pile holes serve as a penetration aid when all other pile installation methods fail to produce the desired penetration and when authorized by the GFDEOR to minimize the effects of vibrations on adjacent structures. Preformed pile holes are necessary when the presence of rock or strong strata of soils will not permit the installation of

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

piles to the desired penetration by driving or a combination of jetting and driving, when determined necessary, and authorized by the GFDEOR to minimize the effects of vibrations on adjacent existing structures. Drive all piles installed in preformed pile holes to determine that the bearing requirements have been met.

For preformed holes which are required through material that caves during driving to the extent that the preformed hole does not serve its intended purpose, case the hole from the surface through caving material. After installing the pile to the bottom of the casing, remove the casings unless shown otherwise in the Plans. Determine bearing of the pile after removing the casing unless shown otherwise in the Plans. Fill all voids between the pile and soil remaining after driving through preformed holes with clean A-3 sand or sand meeting the requirements of 902-3.3, after the pile has achieved the required minimum tip elevation, unless grouting of preformed pile holes is shown in the Plans. If pile driving is interrupted during sand placement, drive the pile at least 20 additional blows after filling all of the voids between the pile and soil with sand at no additional cost to the Department.

**455-5.10.2 Provisions for Use of Preformed Pile Holes:** Preformed pile holes may be used when the Contractor establishes that the required results cannot be obtained when driving the load bearing piles with specified driving equipment, or if jetting is allowed, while jetting the piles and then driving or while jetting the piles during driving.

**455-5.10.3 Reasons for Preformed Pile Holes:** The Department considers, but does not limit to, the following conditions as reasons for preformed pile holes:

1. Inability to drive piles to the required penetration with driving and jetting equipment.
2. To penetrate a hard layer or layers of rock or strong stratum that the Engineer considers not sufficiently thick to support the structure.
3. To obtain greater penetration into dense (strong) material and into dense material containing holes, cavities or unstable soft layers.
4. To obtain penetration into a stratum in which it is desired to found the structure.
5. To minimize the effects of vibrations or heave on adjacent existing structures.
6. To minimize the effects of ground heave on adjacent piles.

**455-5.10.4 Construction Methods:** Construct preformed pile holes by drilling or driving and withdrawing a suitable punch or chisel at the locations of the piles. Construct a hole that is equal to or slightly greater than the largest pile dimension for the entire length of the hole and of sufficient depth to obtain the required penetration. Carefully form the preformed hole by using a drill or punch guided by a template or other suitable device, and do not exceed the minimum dimensions necessary to achieve the required penetration of the pile. When the Plans call for grouting the preformed pile holes, provide a minimum pile hole dimension that is 2 inches larger than the largest pile dimension. Construct the holes at the Plan position of the pile and the tolerances in location, and ensure the hole is straight and that the batter is the same as specified for the pile. Loose material may remain in the preformed pile hole if the conditions in 455-5.10.1 are satisfied.

**455-5.10.5 Grouting of Pile Holes:** Clean and grout preformed pile holes for bearing piles, when the Plans require grouting after driving. Use grout that meets the requirements of 455-40 and 455-42 and has a minimum compressive strength of 3,000 psi at 28 days or as specified in the Plans. Prepare cylinders and perform QC testing in accordance

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

with 455-43. LOT size and verification will be in accordance with 455-43. Pump the grout through three or more grout pipes initially placed at the bottom of the preformed hole. The Contractor may raise the grout pipes when necessary to prevent clogging and to complete the grouting operations. Maintain the grout pipes below the surface of the previously placed grout. Continue grouting until the grout reaches the ground surface all around the pile. Provide divers to monitor grouting operations when the water depth is such that it is impractical to monitor from the ground surface.

#### **455-5.11 Bearing Requirements:**

**455-5.11.1 General:** Drive piles to provide the bearing required for carrying the loads shown in the Plans. For all types of bearing piles, consider the driving resistance as determined by the methods described herein sufficient for carrying the specified loads as the minimum bearing which is accepted for any type of piles. Determine pile bearing using the method described herein or as shown in the Plans.

For foundations requiring 100% dynamic testing of production piles, ensure each pile has achieved minimum penetration and the minimum required bearing for 6 inches of consecutive driving, or the minimum penetration is achieved, driving has reached practical refusal in firm material and the bearing capacity obtained in all the refusal blows.

For foundations not requiring 100% dynamic testing of production piles, ensure each pile has achieved minimum penetration, the blow count is generally the same or increasing and the minimum required bearing capacity obtained for 24 inches of consecutive driving with less than 1/4 inches rebound per blow, or the minimum penetration is achieved, and driving has reached practical refusal in firm material.

**455-5.11.2 Bearing Criteria:** For foundations requiring 100% dynamic testing, determine the bearing of all piles using the data received from dynamic load testing equipment utilizing internally or externally mounted sensors according to the methods described in 455-5.12.1.

For foundations not requiring 100% dynamic testing, drive all piles to the blow count criteria established by the GFDEOR and the Dynamic Testing Engineer (DTE) using the methods described herein and presented in the production pile length and driving criteria letter (see 455-5.15.2).

**455-5.11.3 Practical Refusal:** Practical refusal is defined as 20 blows per inch or less than one inch penetration, with the hammer operating at the highest setting or setting determined by the DTE for driving piles without damage and less than 1/4 inches rebound per blow. Stop driving as soon as the pile has reached practical refusal.

#### **455-5.11.4 Set-checks and Pile Redrive:**

1. Set-checks: Set-checks consist of re-driving the pile after certain period of time, typically up to 24 hours. Perform set-checks as required and at the waiting periods shown in the Contract Documents. Provide an engineer's level or other suitable equipment for elevation determinations to determine accurate pile penetration during the set-checks. A pile may be accepted when a set-check shows that it has achieved the minimum required pile bearing and has met all other requirements of this Section.

2. Pile Redrive: Pile redrive consists of re-driving the pile after the following working day from initial driving to determine time effects, to reestablish pile capacity due to pile heave, or for other reasons.

3. Uninstrumented Set-Checks and Uninstrumented Pile Redrive: Piles may be accepted based on uninstrumented set-checks or uninstrumented pile redrives only when

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

the piles are redriven for at least 24 inches. In these cases, the piles may be considered to have sufficient bearing resistance when the specified blow count criteria is achieved in accordance with 455-5.11.1 and 455-5.11.2. Unless practical refusal is obtained as defined in 455-5.11.3, set-checks or redrives for piles redriven less than 24 inches must be instrumented for pile acceptance.

4. Instrumented Set-Checks and Instrumented Pile Redrive: Use dynamic load tests using at least 6 hammer blows to determine whether the pile bearing is sufficient. The pile may be considered to have sufficient bearing resistance when dynamic measurements demonstrate the static pile resistance exceeds the required pile resistance for at least one hammer blow and the average static pile resistance during the next five hammer blows exceeds 95% of the required pile resistance. If the pile is advanced farther, the static pile resistance during all subsequent blows must exceed 90% of the required pile resistance.

**455-5.11.5 Pile Heave:** Pile heave is the upward movement of a pile from its originally driven elevation. Drive the piles in an appropriate sequence to minimize the effects of heave and lateral displacement of the ground. Monitor piles previously driven in a pile group for possible heave during the driving of the remaining piles. Take elevation measurements to determine the magnitude of the movement of piles and the ground surface resulting from the driving process. Redrive all piles that have heaved 1/4 inches or more.

**455-5.11.6 Piles with Insufficient Bearing:** When the bearing capacity of any pile is less than the required bearing capacity, the Contractor may splice the pile and continue driving or may extract the pile and drive a pile of greater length, or drive additional piles.

**455-5.11.7 Optional Soil Set-up approach:** If the Contractor so desires, it may consider soil set-up. Production piles that are driven to less than the Nominal Bearing Resistance (NBR) may be accepted based on the anticipated soil setup without set checks on all piles, only if the following criteria are met:

- (a) Pile tip penetration satisfies the minimum penetration requirement following 455-5.9.
- (b) End of Initial Drive (EOID) resistance exceeds 1.10 times the Factored Design Load for the pile bent/pier, as determined by the dynamic testing or blow count criteria.
- (c) The Resistance Factor for computing NBR is taken from the following table:

Resistance Factors for Pile Installation Using Soil Setup (all structures)				
Loading	Design Method	Construction QC Method	Resistance Factor, $\phi$	
			Blow Count Criteria <sup>4</sup>	100% Dynamic Testing <sup>5</sup>
Compression	Davisson Capacity	EDC <sup>1</sup> , or PDA and CAPWAP <sup>2</sup>	0.55	0.60
		Static Load Testing <sup>3</sup>	0.65	0.70
		Statnamic Load Testing <sup>3</sup>	0.60	0.65
Uplift	Skin Friction	EDC <sup>1</sup> , or PDA and CAPWAP <sup>2</sup>	0.45	0.50
		Static Load Testing <sup>3</sup>	0.55	0.55

1. Using the analysis methods published by Tran et al (2012).  
2. Dynamic Load Testing and Signal Matching Analysis.



Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

3. Used to confirm the results of Dynamic Load Testing and Signal Matching Analysis.
4. Initial drive of production piles using Blow Count Criteria.
5. Initial drive of all piles accepted by results of Dynamic Testing of all blows.

(d) At least one test pile is driven at each bent/pier with a successful set check at the anticipated production pile tip elevations and one of the following sets of dynamic load testing conditions are met at each bent/pier.

1. The bearing of at least 10% of piles in the bent/pier (round up to the next whole number) is confirmed by instrumented set-check, and all test piles and instrumented set-checks demonstrate the pile resistance exceeds the NBR within seven days after EOID

2. The bearing of at least 20% of piles in the bent/pier (round up to the next whole number) is confirmed by instrumented set-check, and all test piles and instrumented set-checks demonstrate the pile resistance exceeds the NBR within 21 days after EOID.

(e) All uninstrumented piles are driven deeper and to a greater EOID resistance than the EOID resistance of all instrumented production piles in the same bent/pier.

#### **455-5.12 Methods to Determine Pile Capacity:**

**455-5.12.1 General:** Dynamic load tests using an externally mounted instrument system and signal matching analyses or embedded gauges will determine pile capacity for all structures or projects unless otherwise shown on the Plans. Notify the Engineer two working days prior to placement of piles within the template and at least one working day prior to driving piles.

#### **455-5.12.2 Wave Equation:**

1. General: Use Wave Equation Analysis for Piles (WEAP) programs to evaluate the suitability of the proposed driving system (including the hammer, follower, capblock and pile cushions) as well as to estimate the driving resistance, in blows per 12 inches or blows per inch, to achieve the pile bearing requirements and to evaluate pile driving stresses.

Use Wave Equation Analyses to show the hammer meets the requirements described in 455-5.3.

2. Required Equipment for Driving: Hammer acceptance is solely based on satisfactory field trial including dynamic load test results and Wave Equation Analysis. Supply a hammer system that meets the requirements described in the specifications based on satisfactory field performance.

In the event piles require different hammer sizes, the Contractor may elect to drive with more than one size hammer or with a variable energy hammer, provided the hammer is properly sized and cushioned, will not damage the pile, and will develop the required resistance.

3. Maximum Allowed Pile Stresses:

- a. General: The maximum allowed driving stresses for concrete, steel, and timber piles are given below. In the event dynamic load tests show that the hammer will overstress the pile, modify the driving system or method of operation as required to prevent overstressing the pile. In such cases provide additional cushioning, reduce the stroke, or make other appropriate agreed upon changes.

- b. Prestressed Concrete Piles: Use the following equations to determine the maximum allowed pile stresses:

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

$$s_{apc} = 0.7 f'_c - 0.75 f_{cpe} \quad (1)$$

$$s_{apt} = 6.5 (f'_c)^{0.5} + 1.05 f_{cpe} \quad (2a) \text{ for piles less than 50 feet long}$$

$$s_{apt} = 3.25 (f'_c)^{0.5} + 1.05 f_{cpe} \quad (2b) \text{ for piles 50 feet long and greater}$$

$$s_{apt} = 500 \quad (2c) \text{ within 20 feet of a mechanical splice}$$

where:

$s_{apc}$  = maximum allowed pile compressive stress, psi

$s_{apt}$  = maximum allowed pile tensile stress, psi

$f'_c$  = specified minimum compressive strength of concrete, psi

$f_{cpe}$  = effective prestress (after all losses) at the time of driving, psi, taken as 0.8 times the initial prestress force divided by the minimum net concrete cross sectional area of the pile ( $f_{cpe} = 0$  for dowel spliced piles).

c. Steel Piles: Ensure the maximum pile compression and tensile stresses measured during driving are no greater than 0.9 times the yield strength ( $0.9 f_y$ ) of the steel.

d. Timber Piles: Ensure the maximum pile compression and tensile stresses measured during driving are no greater than 3.6 ksi for Southern Pine and Pacific Coast Douglas Fir and 0.9 of the ultimate parallel to the grain strength for piles of other wood.

**455-5.12.3 Temporary Piles:** Submit for the Engineers review, an analysis signed and sealed by the GFDEOR which establishes the pile lengths for temporary piles. Submit for the Engineer's acceptance, a Wave Equation analysis signed and sealed by the GFDEOR which establishes the driving criteria for temporary piles at least five working days prior to driving temporary production piles. The required driving resistance is equal to the sum of the factored design load plus the scour and down drag resistances shown in the Plans, divided by the appropriate resistance factor or the nominal bearing resistance shown in the Plans, whichever is higher:

The maximum resistance factor is 0.45 when only wave equation analysis is performed. However, a larger resistance factor may be applicable when additional testing is provided by the GFDEOR in accordance with Section 3.5.6 of Volume 1 of the FDOT Structures Manual.

**455-5.12.4 Dynamic Load Tests:** Dynamic load testing consists of estimating pile capacity by the analysis of electronic data collected from blows of the hammer during driving of an instrumented pile in accordance with 455-5.14.

**455-5.12.5 Static Load Tests:** Static load testing consists of applying a static load to the pile to determine its capacity. Use the Modified Quick Test Procedure in accordance with 455-2.2.1.

**455-5.12.6 Fender Pile Installation:** For piles used in fender systems, regardless of type or size of pile, either drive them full length or jet the piles to within 2 feet of cutoff and drive to cutoff elevation to seat the pile. The Engineer will not require a specific driving resistance unless noted in the Plans. Use methods and equipment for installation that do not

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

damage the piles. If the method or equipment used causes damage to the pile, modify the methods or equipment.

**455-5.12.7 Structures Without Test Piles:** For structures without 100% dynamic testing or test piles, dynamically test the first pile(s) in each bent or pier at locations shown in the Plans to determine the blow count criteria for the remaining piles. Dynamically test at least 5% of the piles at each bent or pier (rounded up to the next whole number).

**455-5.13 Test Piles:**

**455-5.13.1 General:** All test piles will have dynamic load tests. Drive piles of the same cross-section and type as the permanent piles shown in the Plans, in order to determine any or all of the following:

1. Installation criteria for the piles.
2. Nature of the soil.
3. Lengths of permanent piles required for the work.
4. Driving resistance characteristics of the various soil strata.
5. Amount of work necessary to obtain minimum required pile penetration.
6. The ability of the driving system to do the work.
7. The need for point protection.
8. Verify the bearing stratum is of sufficient thickness to prevent punching shear failure.

Because test piles are exploratory in nature, drive them harder (within the limits of practical refusal), deeper, and to a greater bearing resistance than required for the permanent piling. Except for test piles which are to be statically or Statnamically load tested, drive test piles their full length or to practical refusal. Splice test piles which have been driven their full length and have developed only minimal required bearing and proceed with further driving.

As a minimum, unless otherwise accepted by the Engineer, do not cease driving of test piles until obtaining the required bearing capacity continuously, where the blow count is increasing, for 10 feet unless reaching practical refusal first. For test piles which are to be statically or Statnamically load tested, ignore this minimum and drive these piles as anticipated for the production piles.

When test piles attain practical refusal prior to attaining minimum penetration, perform all work necessary to attain minimum penetration and the required bearing. Where practical, use water jets to break the pile loose for further driving. Where jetting is impractical, extract the pile and install a preformed pile hole through which driving will continue. Install instruments on all test piles.

**455-5.13.2 Location of Test Piles:** Drive all test piles in the position of permanent piles at the designated locations. Ensure that all test piles designated to be statically load tested are plumb. In the event that all the piles are battered at a static load test site, an out-of-position location for driving a plumb pile for the static load test may be selected.

**455-5.13.3 Equipment for Driving:** Use the same hammer and equipment for driving test piles as for driving the permanent piles. Also use the same equipment to redrive piles.

**455-5.14 Dynamic Load Tests:** Take dynamic measurements during the driving of piles designated in the Plans. Provide all personnel, materials and equipment for dynamic testing. For concrete piles, install instruments prior to driving and monitor all blows delivered to the pile. For

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

steel production piles, the Engineer may accept instrumented set checks or redrives. Perform dynamic load tests to evaluate the following:

1. Suitability of the driving equipment, including hammer, capblock, pile cushion, and any proposed follower.

2. Pile capacity.

3. Pile stresses.

4. Energy transfer to pile.

5. Distribution of soil resistance.

6. Soil variables including quake and damping.

7. Hammer-pile-soil system for Wave Equation analyses.

8. Pile installation problems.

Either install embedded gauges in the piles in accordance with Standard Plans, Index 455-003, or attach instruments (strain transducers to measure force and accelerometers to measure acceleration) with bolts to the pile for dynamic testing.

Monitor the stresses in the piles with the dynamic test equipment during driving to ensure the maximum allowed stresses are not exceeded. If necessary, add additional cushioning, replace the cushions, or reduce the hammer stroke to maintain stresses below the maximum allowable. If dynamic test equipment measurements indicate non-axial driving, immediately realign the driving system. If the cushion is compressed to the point that a change in alignment of the hammer will not correct the problem, add cushioning or change the cushion.

Drive the pile to the required penetration and resistance.

Do not use a cold diesel hammer for a set-check. Generally, warm up the hammer by driving another pile or applying at least 20 blows to a previously driven pile or to timber mats placed on the ground.

#### **455-5.15 Pile Lengths:**

**455-5.15.1 Test Pile Length:** Provide the length of test piles shown in the Plans or as directed by the GFDEOR.

#### **455-5.15.2 Production Pile Length**

The production pile lengths shall be the lengths determined by the DTE and the GFDEOR based on all information available before the driving of the permanent piles, including, but not limited to, information gained from the driving of test piles, dynamic load testing, static load testing, supplemental soil testing, etc. When authorized by the Department, soil freeze information obtained during set checks and pile redrives may be used to determine authorized pile lengths for sites with extreme soil conditions.

After completion of the test pile program, production pile lengths and driving criteria shall be established in a letter signed and sealed jointly by the DTE and the GFDEOR. The letter will contain an itemized list of authorized pile lengths as well as the blow count criteria for acceptance of the pile, minimum penetrations, maximum strokes, criteria to replace cushions and any other conditions and limitations deemed appropriate for the safe installation of the piles. Use these lengths for furnishing the permanent piling for the structure. At least two working days, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, prior to beginning of production pile driving, submit the letter and load test reports to the Engineer including the following electronic files (Windows compatible): dynamic testing data, signal matching data and results, and Wave Equation data and results.

If there are no test piles, provide the Production Pile Order Lengths in the Pile Data Table on the Structure Plans.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

**455-5.16 Allowable Driving Tolerances:**

**455-5.16.1 General:** Meet the tolerances described in this Subarticle for the piles that are free standing without lateral restraint (after the template is removed). After the piles are driven, do not move the piles laterally to force them to be within the specified tolerances, except to move battered piles laterally to overcome the dead load deflections caused by the pile's weight. When this is necessary, submit calculations signed and sealed by a Specialty Engineer to the Engineer that verify the amount of dead load deflection prior to moving any piles.

**455-5.16.2 Position:** Ensure that the final position of the pile head at cut-off elevation is no more than 3 inches, or 1/6 of the diameter of the pile, whichever is less, laterally in the X or Y coordinate from the Plan position indicated in the Plans.

**455-5.16.3 Axial Alignment:** Ensure that the axial alignment of the driven piles does not deviate by more than 1/4 inches per foot from the vertical or batter line indicated in the Plans.

**455-5.16.4 Elevation:** Ensure that the final elevation of the pile head is no more than 1-1/2 inches above, or more than 4 inches below, the elevation shown in the Plans, however in no case shall the pile be embedded less than 8 inches into the cap or footing.

For fender piles, cut off piles at the elevation shown in the Plans to a tolerance of plus 0.0 inches to minus 2.0 inches using sawing or other means as accepted by the Engineer to provide a smooth level cut.

**455-5.16.5 Deviation from Above Tolerances:** Have the Contractor's Engineer of Record perform an evaluation of the as built foundation to determine whether a foundation redesign or an increase in the loading requirements of the piles is needed. Include the signed and sealed evaluation as part of the certification package submitted in accordance with 455-5.19. If the evaluation indicates the foundation or the pile load requirements must be modified, propose a redesign to incorporate out of tolerance piles into pile caps or footings, at no expense to the Department. Submit signed and sealed redesign drawings and computations to the Engineer for review and acceptance. Do not begin any proposed construction until the redesign has been reviewed and accepted by the Engineer, excepted as noted in 455-5.20.

**455-5.17 Disposition of Pile Cut-offs, Test Piles, and Load Test Materials:**

**455-5.17.1 Pile Cut-offs:**

Take ownership of any unused cut-off lengths remaining and remove them from the right-of-way. Provide areas for their disposal.

**455-5.17.2 Test Piles:** Cut off, or build-up as necessary, test piles, and leave them in place as permanent piles. Extract and replace test piles driven in permanent position and found not suitable for use. Pull, or cut off at an elevation 2 feet below the ground surface or bottom of proposed excavation, test piles driven out of permanent position, and dispose of the removed portion of the test pile.

When test piles are required to be driven in permanent pile positions, the Contractor may elect to drive the test pile out of position provided that a replacement pile is furnished and driven in the position that was to be occupied by the test pile. Unless otherwise directed in the Plans or by the Engineer, retain ownership of test piles that are pulled or cut off and provide areas for their disposal.

**455-5.18 Recording:** Inspect and record all the pile installation activities, including but not limited to handling, jetting, predrilling, preforming and driving on the Department's Pile Driving Record form. Steel piles and dynamically tested concrete piles in accordance with 455-5.14 will not require inspection during handling. Keep a pile driving log for each pile installed

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

whether it is, or is not, instrumented. Within one working day after completing the installation of a pile, submit the Pile Driving Record to the Engineer.

**455-5.19 Foundation Certification Packages:** Submit certification packages of pile foundations to the Engineer prior to Pile Verification Testing. A separate Foundation Certification Package must be submitted for each foundation unit. A foundation unit is defined as all the piles within one bent or pier for a specific bridge for each phase of construction. Each Foundation Certification Package shall contain an original certification letter signed and sealed by the GFDEOR certifying the piles have the required axial capacity including compression and uplift, lateral stability, pile integrity, settlements will not affect the functionality of the structure, and that the inspection of the pile installation was performed under the supervision of the GFDEOR. The package shall also include all pile driving logs, EDC records, all supplemental dynamic testing raw data and analyses for the foundation unit, and the signed and sealed evaluation performed to address out of tolerance piles in accordance with 455-5.16.5. The certification shall not be contingent on any future repair or testing, or any approval by the Engineer.

For foundation units where all piles are dynamically load tested by the same DTE, the foundation certification package may be prepared by the DTE, and the DTE may sign and seal the foundation layout and pile data table to reflect as-built conditions if the DTE is prequalified under the appropriate category in Florida Administrative Code (F.A.C.) 14-75.

**455-5.20 Verification:** One working day, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, after receipt of the Foundation Certification Package, the Engineer will determine whether a pile in that foundation unit will be selected for verification testing. Based on its review of the certification package, the Engineer may or may not choose a pile for verification testing in any or all foundation units. For the pile selected by the Engineer for verification testing, the Engineer will provide the dynamic load test equipment and personnel for the Pile Verification Testing. Provide the driving equipment and pile driving crew for the Pile Verification Testing and provide support as needed to prepare the piles for testing. The Engineer will provide the results of the verification testing and identify additional needs for verification testing within one working day of testing.

If the capacity or integrity of any pile is found to be deficient, the Engineer will reject the entire certification package for the foundation unit, and the Contractor shall:

1. Correct the deficiency;
2. Correct the process that led to the deficiency;
3. Demonstrate to the Engineer that the remainder of the piles in the foundation unit are acceptable, including additional dynamic load tests to verify pile capacity and integrity, and;
4. Recertify the foundation unit.

One working day, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, after receipt of the recertification, the Engineer shall then determine whether additional verification testing is required in that foundation unit. If the capacity or integrity of a verification pile is found to be deficient, additional cycles of deficiency correction and verification testing shall be completed until no more pile capacity or integrity deficiencies are detected or the design is modified accordingly. Piles shall not be cut-off nor bent/pier caps placed prior to successful completion of the Pile Verification Testing Program for that foundation unit. In case of disagreement of dynamic testing results, the Engineer's results will be final and will be used for acceptance.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

On land foundation units or water foundation units when the pile cutoff is at least six feet above mean high water, the Contractor may cut-off piles prior to a complete submittal of the Certification Package or to a successful completion of the Pile Verification Testing Program at its own risk. If any piles in a foundation unit are cut-off prior to the submittal of a certification package or completion of the Pile Verification Testing Program and the Engineer determines that verification testing is required, the Contractor shall perform, at no expense to the Department, any work and labor required to expose any pile selected for verification to allow the installation of the instruments in dry conditions and to provide references and access to the Engineer for such testing. Piles experiencing damage during the verification testing or requiring build-up after the verification shall be repaired by the Contractor at no expense to the Department. No pile bent/cap shall be poured prior to successful completion of the Pile Verification Testing Program for that foundation unit or notification by the Engineer that no verification will be required.

#### **455-6 Timber Piling.**

**455-6.1 Description:** Drive timber piles of the kind and dimensions specified in the Plans at the locations and to the elevations shown in the Plans.

**455-6.2 Materials:** Meet the timber piling requirements of Section 953. Treat the piles according to the applicable provisions of Section 955. Treat all cuts and drilled holes in accordance with 470-3.

#### **455-6.3 Preparation for Driving:**

**455-6.3.1 Caps:** Protect the heads of timber piles during driving, using a cap of approved type, that will distribute the hammer blow over the entire cross-section of the pile. When necessary, cut the head of the pile square before beginning pile driving.

**455-6.3.2 Collars:** Provide collars or bands to protect piles against splitting and brooming at no expense to the Department.

**455-6.3.3 Shoes:** Provide piles shod with metal shoes, of a design satisfactory to the Engineer, at no expense to the Department. Shape pile tips to receive the shoe and install according to the manufacturer's directions.

**455-6.4 Storage and Handling:** Store and handle piles in the manner necessary to avoid damage to the piling. Take special care to avoid breaking the surface of treated piles. Do not use cant dogs, hooks, or pike poles when handling and storing the piling.

**455-6.5 Cutting Off:** Saw off the tops of all timber piles at the elevation indicated in the Plans. Saw off piles which support timber caps to the exact plane of the superimposed structure so that they exactly fit. Withdraw and replace broken, split, or misplaced piles.

**455-6.6 Build-ups:** The Engineer will not permit splices or build-ups for timber piles. Extract piles driven below Plan elevation and drive a longer pile.

#### **455-6.7 Pile Heads:**

**455-6.7.1 Piles with Timber Caps:** On piles wider than the timber caps, dress off the part of the pile head projecting beyond the sides of the cap to a slope of 45 degrees. Coat the cut surface with the required preservative and then place a sheet of copper, with a weight of 10 ounces per square foot or greater, meeting the requirements of ASTM B370. Provide a cover measuring at least 4 inches more in each dimension greater than the diameter of the pile. Bend the cover down over the pile and fasten the edges with large head copper nails or three wraps of No. 12 copper wire.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

**455-6.7.2 Fender and Bulkhead Piles:** Paint the heads of fender piles and of bulkhead piles with preservative and then cover with copper as provided above for piles supporting timber caps.

#### **455-7 Prestressed Concrete Piling.**

**455-7.1 Description:** Provide prestressed concrete piles that are manufactured, cured, and driven in accordance with the Contract Documents. Provide piles full length without splices when transported by barge or the pile length is less than or equal to 120 feet. When piles are transported by truck and the pile length exceeds 120 feet or the maximum length for a 3-point pick-up according to Standard Plans, Index 455-001, and splicing is desired, provide minimal splices. Include the cost of the splices in the cost of the pile.

**455-7.2 Manufacture:** Fabricate piles in accordance with Section 450. When embedded gauges will be used for dynamic load testing, supply and install in square prestressed concrete piles in accordance with Standard Plans Index 455-003. Ensure the embedded gauges are installed by personnel approved by the manufacturer.

#### **455-7.3 Storage and Handling:**

**455-7.3.1 Time of Driving Piles:** Drive prestressed concrete piles at any time after the concrete has been cured in accordance with Section 450, and the concrete compressive strength is equal to or greater than the specified 28-day compressive strength.

**455-7.3.2 Storage:** Support piles on adequate dunnage both in the prestress yard and at the job site in accordance with the locations shown in the Standard Plans to minimize undue bending stresses or creating a sweep or camber in the pile.

**455-7.3.3 Handling:** Handle and store piles in the manner necessary to eliminate the danger of fracture by impact or of undue bending stresses in handling or transporting the piles from the forms and into the leads. In general, lift concrete piles by means of a suitable bridge or slings attached to the pile at the locations shown in the Standard Plans. Construct slings used to handle piles of a fabric material or braided wire rope constructed of six or more wire ropes which will not mar the corners or the surface finish of the piles. Do not use chains to handle piles. During transport, support concrete piles at the lifting locations shown in the Standard Plans or fully support them throughout 80% or more of their length. In handling piles for use in salty or brackish water, exercise special care to avoid damaging the surface and corners of the pile. If an alternate transportation support arrangement is desired, submit calculations, signed and sealed by the Specialty Engineer, for acceptance by the Engineer prior to transporting the pile. Calculations must show that the pile can be transported without exceeding the bending moments calculated using the support locations shown in the Plans.

**455-7.4 Cracked Piles:** The Engineer will reject any pile that becomes cracked in handling to the point that a transverse or longitudinal crack extends through the pile, shows failure of the concrete as indicated by spalling of concrete on the main body of the pile adjacent to the crack, which in the opinion of the Engineer will not withstand driving stresses, or becomes damaged during installation. The Engineer will not reject any pile for the occasional minor surface hairline cracking caused by shrinkage.

Do not drive piling with irreparable damage, which is defined as any cracks that extend through the pile cross-sectional area that are, or will be, below ground or water level at the end of driving. Remove and replace broken piles or piles cracked to the extent described above at no expense to the Department. The Engineer will accept cracks less than 0.005 inches which do not extend through the pile. Using approved methods, cut off and splice or build-up to



Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

cut-off elevation piles with cracks greater than 0.005 inches at the pile head or above ground or water level, and piles with cracks above ground or water level which extend through the cross-sectional area of the pile. The Engineer, at his discretion, may require correction of pile damage or pile cracks by cutting down the concrete to the plane of sound concrete below the crack and rebuilding it to cut-off elevation, or the Engineer may reject the pile. Extract and replace rejected piles that cannot be repaired, at no expense to the Department.

Take appropriate steps to prevent the occurrence of cracking, whether due to handling, transporting or driving.

**455-7.5 Preparation for Transportation:** Cut strands flush with the surface of the concrete using an abrasive cutting blade before transporting the piles from the casting yard.

Cut and patch the metal lifting devices in accordance with 450-9.2.1.

**455-7.6 Method of Driving:** Unless otherwise directed, drive piles by a hammer or by means of a combination of water jets and hammer when jetting is allowed. When using jets in combination with a hammer, withdraw the jets and drive the pile by the hammer alone to secure final penetration and to rigidly fix the tip end of the pile. Keep jets in place if they are being used to continuously eliminate the soil resistance in the scour zone.

**455-7.7 Extensions and Build-ups Used to Increase Production Lengths:**

**455-7.7.1 General:** Where splices, extensions and build-ups for concrete piles are necessary, construct them in accordance with Standard Plans, Index 455-002.

These requirements are not applicable to specially designed piling. Make splices for special pile designs as shown in the Plans.

**455-7.7.2 Extensions to be Driven or Those 21 feet or Longer:** Construct extensions to be driven or extensions 21 feet or longer in length in accordance with the details shown in the Plans and in a manner including the requirements, sequences, and procedures outlined below:

1. Cast a splice section in accordance with Section 450 with the dowel steel in the correct position and alignment.
2. Drill dowel holes using an approved steel template that will position and align the drill bit during drilling. Drill holes a minimum of 2 inches deeper than the length of the dowel to be inserted.
3. Clean the drilled dowel holes by inserting a high-pressure air hose to the bottom of the hole and blowing the hole clean from the bottom upward. Eliminate any oil, dust, water, and other deleterious materials from the holes and the concrete surfaces to be joined.
4. Place forms around joints between the pile sections.
5. Mix the adhesive components in accordance with the manufacturer's directions. Do not mix sand or any other filler material with the epoxy components unless it is prepackaged by the manufacturer for this specific purpose. Use adhesives meeting the requirements of Section 926 for Type B Epoxy Compounds.
6. After ensuring that all concrete surfaces are dry, fill the dowel holes with the adhesive material.
7. Insert the dowels of the spliced section into the adhesive filled holes of the bottom section and position the spliced section so that the axes of the two sections are in concentric alignment and the ends of the abutting sections are spaced 1/2 inches apart. The Contractor may use small steel spacers of the required thickness provided they have 3 inches or more of cover after completing the splice. Fill the space between the abutting sections completely with the adhesive.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

8. Secure the spliced sections in alignment until the adhesive is cured in accordance with the manufacturer’s directions for the time appropriate with the prevailing ambient temperatures. Do not utilize the crane to secure the pile extension during the adhesive cure time. Utilize alignment braces to maintain the proper pile alignment during the epoxy cure time.

9. After curing is completed, remove alignment braces and forms and clean and dress the spliced area to match the pile dimensions.

When dowel splices need to be driven, perform dynamic instrumentation during the driving of each dowel spliced pile to monitor and control the stresses and to verify the splicing integrity. Replace any damaged pile splices in accordance with 455-3. Provide the Engineer 48 hours advance notification prior to driving spliced piles.

**455-7.7.3 Precast Reinforced Non-Drivable Build-ups less than 21 feet:**

Construct precast reinforced non-drivable build-ups less than 21 feet in accordance with the requirements of this Subarticle, Section 346, and Section 400. Provide the same material for the form surfaces for precast build-ups as was used to form the prestressed piles. Use concrete of the same mix as used in the prestressed pile and dimension the cross-section the same as piling being built up. Install build-ups as specified in 455-7.7.2(2) through 455-7.7.2(9). Apply to the build-ups the same surface treatment or sealant applied to the prestressed piles.

**455-7.8 Pre-Planned Splices:** Construct splices in accordance with the dowel splice method contained in the Standard Plan Indexes or using proprietary splices which are listed on the Department’s Approved Product List (APL). Splice test piles in the same manner as the production piles. Include in the pile installation plan, the chosen method of splicing and the approximate locations of the splice. Generally, place the splice at approximately the midpoint between the estimated pile tip and the ground surface, considering scour if applicable. Stagger the splice location between adjacent piles by a minimum of 10 feet. Obtain the Engineer’s approval prior to constructing any pile sections. Construct piles which are to be spliced using the dowel splice with preformed dowel holes in the bottom section and embedded dowels in the upper section.

When dowel splices need to be driven, perform dynamic instrumentation during the driving of each dowel spliced pile to monitor and control the stresses and verify the splicing integrity. Replace any damaged pile splices in accordance with 455-3. Provide the Engineer 48 hours advance notification prior to driving spliced piles.

Mechanical pile splices must be capable of developing the following capacities in the pile section unless shown otherwise in the Plans and capable of being installed without damage to the pile or splice:

1. Compressive strength = (Pile Cross sectional area) x (28-day concrete strength)

2. Tensile Strength = (Pile Cross sectional area) x 900 psi

Table 455-1	
Pile Size (inches)	Bending Strength (kip-feet)
18	245
20	325
24	600
30	950

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

**455-7.9 Pile Cut-offs:** After the completion of driving, cut piles off which extend above the cut-off elevation with an abrasive saw. Make the cut the depth necessary to cleanly cut through the prestressed strands. Take ownership and dispose of cut-off sections not used elsewhere as allowed by this Section.

#### **455-8 Steel Piling.**

**455-8.1 Description:** Furnish, splice, drive, and cut off structural steel shapes to form bearing piles. Include in this work the preparation of a smooth and square pile top meeting the requirements of ASTM A252 or API 5L prior to driving, installation of structural steel bracing by bolting or welding, construction of splices and the filling of pipe piles with the materials specified in 455-8.9.

**455-8.2 Material:** For the material in steel piles, pile bracing, scabs, wedges, and splices, meet the requirements of Section 962.

**455-8.3 Pile Splices:** Order and use the full authorized pile length where practicable. Do not splice to obtain authorized lengths less than 40 feet except when shown in the Plans. Locate all splices in the authorized pile length in portions of the pile expected to be at least 15 feet below the final ground surface after driving. When it is not practicable to provide authorized pile lengths longer than 40 feet in a single length, use no more than one field splice per additional 40 feet of authorized pile length. Shop splices may be used to join single lengths of pile which are at least 20 feet in length. One shorter segment of pile may be used to achieve the authorized pile length when needed.

Where the pile length authorized is not sufficient to obtain the required bearing value or penetration, order an additional length of pile and splice it to the original length.

Make all splices in accordance with details shown in the Plans and in compliance with the general requirements of AWS D1.1 or American Petroleum Institute Specification 5L (API 5L).

**455-8.4 Welding:** Make all welded connections to steel piles by electric arc welding, in accordance with details shown in the Plans and in compliance with the general requirements of AWS D1.5. Electroslag welding is not permitted. Welds will be inspected by visual methods.

**455-8.5 Pile Heads and Tips:** Cut off all piles at the elevation shown in the Plans. If using a cutting torch, make the surface as smooth as practical.

Where foundation material is so dense that the Contractor cannot drive the pile to the required penetration and firmly seat it without danger of crumpling the tip, reinforce the tips with cast steel point protectors. Construct point protectors in one piece of cast steel meeting the requirements of ASTM A27, Grade 65-35 heat treated to provide full bearing for the piles. Attach points by welding according to the recommendations of the manufacturer.

**455-8.6 Pile Bent Bracing Members:** Place structural steel sway and cross bracing, and all other steel tie bracing, on steel pile bents and bolt or weld in place as indicated in the Plans. Where piles are not driven into position in exact alignment as shown in the Plans, furnish and place fills and shims as required to square and line up faces of flanges for cross bracing.

**455-8.7 Coating:** Coat exposed parts of steel piling, wedging, bracing, and splices in accordance with the provisions for coating structural steel as specified in Section 560.

**455-8.8 Storage and Handling:** While handling or transporting the piles from the point of origin and into the leads, store and handle in the manner necessary to avoid damage due to bending stresses. In general, lift steel piles by means of a suitable bridge or a sling attached to the

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

pile at appropriate points to prevent damage. Lift the pile from the horizontal position in a manner that will prevent damage due to bending of the flanges and/or web.

**455-8.9 Filling Pipe Piles:** Ensure closed-end pipe piles are watertight. When required by the Plans, fill pipe piles with the specified materials. Use clean concrete sands and concrete meeting the requirements of Section 346. Place concrete in open ended pipes containing water using methods in accordance with 455-15.9 with modified tremie and pump line sizes. Concrete may be placed directly into pipes which are dry. Construct and place reinforcement cages in accordance with 455-16, except the minimum number of spacers per level is three. Reinforcement cages may be installed before concrete placement or after concrete placement is completed if proper alignment and position is obtainable.

#### **455-9 Sheet Piling.**

**455-9.1 Description:** Leave permanent piling in place as part of the finished work and remove temporary piling after each construction phase unless otherwise authorized by the Engineer.

**455-9.2 Materials:** Meet the following requirements:

Concrete .....	Section 346
Bar Reinforcement .....	Section 931
Prestressing Reinforcement .....	Section 933
Steel Sheet Piles* .....	Section 962

\*For temporary steel sheet piles meet the requirements specified in the Plans.

**455-9.3 Steel Sheet Piling:** Drive steel sheet piling and cut off true to line and grade. Install steel sheet piling with a suitable hammer. Remove and replace any section damaged during handling and installation at no additional expense to the Department.

**455-9.3.1 Method of Installation:** Where rock or strong material is encountered such that the sheet piles cannot be set to grade by driving, remove the strong material by other acceptable means, such as excavation and backfilling, drilling or by punching.

#### **455-9.4 Concrete Sheet Piling:**

**455-9.4.1 Description:** Ensure that concrete sheet piling is of prestressed concrete construction and manufactured, cured, and installed in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

**455-9.4.2 Manufacture of Piles:** Ensure that the piles are fabricated in accordance with Section 450.

**455-9.4.3 Method of Installation:** Jet concrete sheet piling to grade where practical. Use a minimum of two jets. Provide water at the nozzles of sufficient volume and pressure to freely erode material adjacent to the piles. Where encountering rock or strong material, such that the sheet piles cannot be set to grade by jetting, remove the strong materials by other acceptable means, such as excavation and backfilling, drilling or by punching with a suitable punch.

**455-9.4.4 Grouting and Caulking:** Concrete sheet piles are generally detailed to have tongues and grooves on their lower ends, and double grooves on their upper ends. Where so detailed, after installation, clean the grooves of all sand, mud, or debris, and fully grout the grooves. Use approved plastic bags (sheaths) which will meet the shape and length of the groove to be grouted to contain the plastic grout within the double grooves. Provide grout composed of one part cement and two parts sand. Use clean A-3 sand or sand meeting the requirements of Section 902 in this grout. In lieu of sand-cement grout, the Contractor may use concrete meeting

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

the requirements of Section 347, using small gravel or crushed stone coarse aggregate. Deposit the grout through a grout pipe placed within a watertight plastic sheath (bag) extending the full depth of the double grooves and which, when filled, completely fills the slot formed by the double grooves.

**455-9.5 Storage and Handling:** Handle and store all sheet piles in a manner to prevent damage. Handle long sheet piles with fabric slings or braided wire rope constructed of six or more wire ropes placed at appropriate lift points to prevent damage due to excessive bending.

#### **455-10 Pile Installation Plan (PIP).**

**455-10.1 General:** At the preconstruction conference or at least 15 days prior to driving the first pile, submit a Pile Installation Plan for review by the Engineer. The PIP shall be used to govern all pile installation activities. In the event that deviations from the PIP are observed, the Engineer may perform Independent Verification Testing/Review of the Contractor's equipment, procedures, personnel and PIP at any time during production pile driving. If, as determined by the Engineer, pile driving equipment, procedures and/or personnel for the PIP is deemed inadequate to consistently provide undamaged driven piling meeting the contract requirements, the Contractor's PIP acceptance may be withdrawn pending corrective actions. Production driving shall then cease and not restart until corrective actions have been taken and the PIP re-accepted.

Ensure the Pile Driving Installation Plan information includes the following:

1. List and size of proposed equipment including cranes, barges, driving equipment, jetting equipment, compressors, and preformed pile hole equipment on the Department's Pile Driving Installation Plan Form (Form No. 700-020-01). Include manufacturer's data sheets on hammers.
2. Methods to determine hammer energy in the field for determination of pile capacity. Include in the submittal necessary charts and recent calibrations for any pressure measuring equipment.
3. Detailed drawings of any proposed followers.
4. Detailed drawings of templates.
5. Details of proposed load test equipment and procedures, including recent calibrations of jacks and required load cells.
6. Sequence of driving of piles for each different configuration of pile layout.
7. Details of proposed features and procedures for protection of existing structures.
8. Required shop drawings for piles, cofferdams, etc.
9. Methods and equipment proposed to prevent displacement of piles during placement and compaction of fill within 15 feet of the piles.
10. Methods to prevent deflection of battered piles due to their own weight and to maintain their as-driven position until casting of the pile cap is complete.
11. Proposed pile splice locations and details of any proprietary splices anticipated to be used.
12. Methods and equipment proposed to prevent damage to voided or cylinder piles due to interior water pressure.
13. Name and experience record of pile driving superintendent or foreman in responsible charge of pile driving operations. Ensure the pile driving superintendent or

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

foreman in responsible charge of the pile driving operations has the experience requirements of 105-8.13 installing driven piles of the size and depth shown in the Plans.

14. The names of the CTQP qualified inspectors assigned to inspect the pile installation. If the Dynamic Testing Engineer is also a CTQP qualified pile driving inspector and is able to perform both operations, then an additional pile driving inspector is not required when driving piles using embedded sensors.

15. The quality control processes to ensure the required capacity is achieved in all piles. Include in the PIP the steps and analyses that would be performed when driving conditions change (such as unanticipated tip elevations, hammer modifications, presence of temporary piles and structures, preforming, changes, etc.).

16. The name and contact information for the single representative of the Contractor, independent of field operations personnel, to resolve to the Engineer's satisfaction conflicts in the driving procedures or interpretations of the driving criteria. This person shall be available within two hours notice, and shall have the authority to refer issues to higher levels (corporate, if needed).

17. A letter from the GFDEOR certifying concurrence with the PIP.

Notify the Engineer of any test pile driving and production pile driving at least 1 week prior to beginning the installation operations of any pile.

**455-10.2 Acceptance of the Pile Installation Plan:** The Engineer will evaluate the PIP for conformance with the Contract Documents. Within five working days, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, after receipt of the plan, the Engineer will notify the Contractor of any comments and additional information required and/or changes that may be necessary to satisfy the Contract Documents. Submit changes and respond to the Engineer's comments and allow at least two working days, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, for the Engineer to review the revised PIP.

All equipment and procedures are subject to satisfactory field performance. Make required changes to correct unsatisfactory field performance. The Engineer will give final acceptance after the Contractor makes necessary modifications. Do not make any changes in the driving system after acceptance without a revised PIP with concurrence of the GFDEOR and acceptance by the Engineer. A hammer repaired on site or removed from the site and returned is considered to have its performance altered (efficiency increased or decreased), which is considered a change in the driving system. Perform a dynamic load test in accordance with 455-5.14 on the first pile driven with this hammer to confirm the driving criteria is still appropriate at no additional compensation.

Acceptance of the PIP by the Engineer does not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to perform the work in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Engineer's acceptance is not a guarantee that the chosen methods and equipment are capable of obtaining the required results; this responsibility lies with the Contractor.

ARTICLE 455-11 is deleted:

#### **455-12 Basis of Payment.**

Contract Price includes all labor, equipment and materials required for furnishing, installing, and certifying completed pile foundations, in place and accepted. No separate payment will be made for any items of work associated with the construction of piling. No additional payment or adjustments will be made for set-checks, re-drives, dynamic load tests, pile

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

instrumentations, splice installations and driving, build-ups, pile extractions, preformed holes or other associated activities.

## C. DRILLED SHAFTS

### 455-13 Description.

Construct drilled shaft foundations consisting of reinforced concrete drilled shafts.

### 455-14 Materials.

**455-14.1 Concrete:** Use concrete meeting the requirements of Section 346, unless otherwise shown in the Plans.

**455-14.2 Reinforcing Steel:** Meet the reinforcing steel requirements of Section 415.

**455-14.3 Polymer Slurry:** Use a product listed on the Department's Approved Product List (APL) meeting the requirements of 932-5.

### 455-15 Construction Methods and Equipment.

#### 455-15.1 General Requirements:

**455-15.1.1 Templates:** When drilling from a barge, provide a fixed template, adequate to maintain shaft position and alignment during all excavation and concreting operations. Do not use floating templates (attached to a barge). When the Contractor fails to properly maintain shaft position and alignment without use of a template when drilling on land, provide a fixed template, adequate to maintain shaft position and alignment during all excavation and concreting operations.

**455-15.1.2 Drilled Shaft Installation Plan (DSIP):** At the preconstruction conference or at least 15 days prior to constructing the first drilled shaft, submit a Drilled Shaft Installation Plan (DSIP) for review and acceptance by the Engineer. The DSIP will be used to govern all drilled shaft construction activities. In the event that deviations from the DSIP are observed, the Engineer may perform Independent Verification Testing/Review of the Contractor's equipment, procedures and personnel at any time during production drilled shaft construction. If, as determined by the Engineer, drilled shaft construction equipment, procedures or personnel is deemed inadequate to consistently provide drilled shafts meeting the contract requirements, the Contractor's DSIP may be withdrawn pending corrective actions. All drilled shaft construction activities shall then cease and not restart until corrective actions have been taken and the DSIP has been re-accepted.

Include in the DSIP the following details:

1. Name and experience record of drilled shaft superintendent or foreman in responsible charge of drilled shaft operations. Ensure the drilled shaft superintendent or foreman in responsible charge of the drilled shaft operations has the experience requirements of 105-8.13 installing drilled shafts of the size and depth shown in the Plans using the following methods:

- a. Wet Method (mineral and polymer slurry),
- b. Casings up to the length shown in the Plans,
- c. Shaft drilling operations on water under conditions as

shown in the Plans.

2. List and size of proposed equipment, including, but not limited to, cranes, drills, augers, bailing buckets, final cleaning equipment, desanding equipment, slurry

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

pumps, core sampling equipment, tremies or concrete pumps, and casings and equipment to install and remove casing.

3. Details of sequence of construction operations and sequence of shaft construction in bents or shaft groups.

4. Details of shaft excavation methods, including casing installation procedures.

5. Details of slurry, including proposed methods to mix, circulate, desand, test methods, and proposed CTQP certified technicians that will perform and document the fluid tests.

6. Details of proposed methods to clean the shaft excavation.

7. Details of shaft reinforcement, including methods to ensure centering/required cover, cage integrity during placement, placement procedures, cage support, and tie downs.

8. Details of concrete placement, including elapsed concrete placement times and proposed operational procedures for concrete tremie or pump, including initial placement, raising during placement, and overfilling of the shaft concrete. Include provisions to ensure proper final shaft cutoff elevation.

9. Details of casing removal when removal is required, including minimum concrete head in casing during removal.

10. Required submittals, including shop drawing and concrete design mixes.

11. Details of any required load tests, including equipment and procedures, and recent calibrations for any jacks or load cells.

12. Proposed Cross-Hole Sonic Logging (CSL) and Thermal Integrity Testing for Drilled (TITDS) Specialty Engineer to supervise field testing and report the test results.

13. Methods and equipment proposed to prevent displacement of casing and/or shafts during placement and compaction of fill.

14. Provide the make and model of the shaft inspection device, if applicable, and procedures for visual inspection.

15. Details of environmental control procedures used to prevent loss of slurry or concrete into waterways or other protected areas.

16. Proposed schedule for test shaft installation, load tests and production shaft installation.

17. For drilled shafts for constructed using polymer slurry, identify the polymer slurry-, the pH and proposed viscosity ranges and a description of the mixing method to be used. Submit the contact information for the manufacturer's representative available for immediate contact during shaft construction and the representative's schedule of availability.

18. Methods to identify and remediate drilled shaft deficiencies.

19. Names of the CTQP qualified inspectors assigned to inspect the drilled shaft installation.

20. The name and contact information for the single representative of the Contractor, independent of field operations personnel, to resolve to the Engineer's satisfaction, conflicts in the drilled shaft installation procedures. This person shall be available



Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

within two hours notice, and shall have the authority to refer issues to higher levels (corporate, if needed).

21. Procedure for grouting non-destructive testing access tubes.

22. A letter from the GFDEOR certifying concurrence with the

DSIP.

23. Other information shown in the Plans or requested by the

Engineer.

#### **455-15.1.2.1 Acceptance of the Drilled Shaft Installation Plan (DSIP):**

The Engineer will evaluate the DSIP for conformance with the Contract Documents. Within five working days, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, after receipt of the plan, the Engineer will notify the Contractor of any comments and additional information required and/or changes that may be necessary to meet the above requirements and satisfy the Contract Documents. The Engineer will reject any part of the plan that does not meet specifications, plans or has the potential to affect the integrity of adjacent structures or negatively affect the environmental conditions. Submit changes agreed upon for reevaluation. The Engineer will notify the Contractor within two working days, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, after receipt of proposed changes of their acceptance or rejection. All equipment and procedures are subject to trial and satisfactory performance in the field.

Acceptance by the Engineer does not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to perform the work in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Engineer's acceptance is not a guarantee that the chosen methods and equipment are capable of obtaining the required results, this responsibility lies with the Contractor.

**455-15.1.3 General Methods & Equipment:** Perform the excavations required for the shafts, through whatever materials encountered, to the dimensions and elevations shown in the Contract Documents, using methods and equipment suitable for the intended purpose and the materials encountered. Provide drilling tools with a diameter not smaller than one inch of the shaft diameter required in the Plans. Provide equipment capable of constructing shafts supporting bridges to a depth equal to the deepest shaft shown in the Plans plus 15 foot or plus three times the shaft diameter, whichever is greater, except when the Plans require equipment capable of constructing shafts to a deeper depth. Provide equipment capable of constructing shafts supporting sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures to a depth equal to the deepest shaft shown in the Plans plus 5 feet.

Construct drilled shafts according to the Contract Documents using generally either the dry method, wet method, casing method, or permanent casing method as necessary to produce sound, durable concrete foundation shafts free of defects. Use the permanent casing method only when required by the Plans. When the Plans describe a particular method of construction, use this method. When the Plans do not describe a particular method, propose a method on the basis of its suitability to the site conditions and submit it for acceptance by the Engineer.

Set a suitable temporary removable surface casing from at least 1 foot above the ground surface to at least 1-1/2 shaft diameters below the ground surface to prevent caving of the surface soils and to aid in maintaining shaft position and alignment. Do not use a temporary casing larger than 12 inches of the shaft diameter. Fill the oversized temporary casing with drilled shaft concrete at no additional expense to the Department. Withdraw the surface casing after concrete placement.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

For drilled shafts installed to support sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures, provide temporary surface casings from at least 1 foot above the ground surface to at least 5 feet below the ground surface. For sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures foundations located within permanent sidewalks or within 5 feet of curb sections, provide temporary surface casings from no lower than the top of sidewalk to at least 5 feet below the ground surface.

For drilled shafts installed to support sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures, do not attempt to excavate the shaft using plain water or natural slurry. Do not attempt to excavate the shaft using dry construction method unless specifically indicated in the Plans or approved by the Engineer.

**455-15.2 Dry Construction Method:** Use the dry construction method only at sites where the ground water table and soil conditions, generally stiff to hard clays or rock above the water table, make it feasible to construct the shaft in a relatively dry excavation and where the sides and bottom of the shaft are stable and may be visually inspected prior to placing the concrete.

In applying the dry construction method, drill the shaft excavation, remove accumulated seepage water and loose material from the excavation and place the shaft concrete in a relatively dry excavation.

Use the dry construction method only when shaft excavations, as demonstrated in a test hole, have 12 inches or less of seepage water accumulated over a four-hour period, the sides and bottom remain stable without detrimental caving, sloughing, or swelling for a four hour period, and the loose material and water can be satisfactorily removed prior to inspection and prior to placing concrete. Use the wet construction method or the temporary casing construction method for shafts that do not meet the requirements for the dry construction method.

**455-15.3 Wet Construction Method:** Use the wet construction method at all sites where it is impractical to provide a dry excavation for placement of the shaft concrete.

The wet construction method consists of keeping the shaft excavation filled with fluid (mineral slurry, polymer slurry, natural slurry or water), desanding and cleaning the slurry and final cleaning of the excavation by means of a bailing bucket, air lift, submersible pump or other suitable devices and placing the shaft concrete (with a tremie or concrete pump extending to the shaft bottom) which displaces the water or slurry during concreting of the shaft excavation.

Where drilled shafts are located in open water areas, construct the shafts by the wet method using exterior casings extending from above the water elevation into the ground to protect the shaft concrete from water action during placement and curing of the concrete. Install the exterior casing in a manner that will produce a positive seal at the bottom of the casing so that there is no intrusion or extrusion of water or other materials into or from the shaft excavation.

**455-15.4 Temporary Casing Construction Method:** Use the temporary casing method at all sites where it is inappropriate to use the dry or wet construction methods without the use of temporary casings other than surface casings. In this method, the casing is advanced prior to excavation and withdrawn after concrete placement. When a formation is reached that is nearly impervious, seal in the nearly impervious formation. Proceed with drilling as with the wet method to the projected depth. Proceed with the placement of the concrete as with the dry method. In the event seepage conditions prevent use of the dry method, complete the excavation and concrete placement using wet methods.

Where drilling through materials having a tendency to cave, advance the excavation by drilling in a mineral or polymer slurry. In the event that a caving layer or layers

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

are encountered that cannot be controlled by slurry, install temporary removable casing through such caving layer or layers. The Engineer may require overreaming to the outside diameter of the casing. Take whatever steps are required to prevent caving during shaft excavation including installation of deeper casings. If electing to remove a casing and replace it with a longer casing through caving soils, backfill the excavation. The Contractor may use soil previously excavated or soil from the site to backfill the excavation. The Contractor may use other acceptable methods which will control the size of the excavation and protect the integrity of the foundation soils to excavate through caving layers.

Before withdrawing the casing, ensure that the level of fresh concrete is at such a level that the fluid trapped behind the casing is displaced upward. As the casing is withdrawn, maintain the level of concrete within the casing so that fluid trapped behind the casing is displaced upward out of the shaft excavation without mixing with or displacing the shaft concrete.

The Contractor may use the casing method, when accepted by the Engineer, to construct shafts through weak caving soils that do not contribute significant shaft shear resistance. In this case, place a temporary casing through the weak caving soils before beginning excavation. Conduct excavation using the dry construction method where appropriate for site conditions and the wet construction method where the dry construction method is not appropriate. Withdraw the temporary casing during the concreting operations unless the Engineer accepts otherwise.

**455-15.5 Permanent Casing Construction Method:** Use the permanent casing method when required by the Plans. In this method, place a casing to the prescribed depth before beginning excavation. If the Contractor cannot attain full penetration, the Contractor may excavate through the casing and advance the casing until reaching the desired penetration.

Construct the shaft in accordance with 455-15.4 except for cutting the casing off at the prescribed elevation upon reaching the proper construction sequence and leaving the remainder of the casing in place.

**455-15.5.1 Temporary Extension of Permanent Casing:** When the wet method does not provide enough support to excavate and clean the drilled shaft extension below the permanent casing tip elevations shown in the Plans, the permanent casing may be temporarily extended to an elevation deeper than the tip elevation at no additional expense to the Department. The rock socket length must be extended as specified in 455-15.7 and the casing raised to the original casing tip elevation shown in the Plans after the concrete placement. Include details of this procedure in the DSIP for the Engineer's review and approval.

**455-15.5.2 Temporary Casing to Stabilize Excavation below Permanent Casing:** To stabilize the excavation below the permanent casing tip elevation, a temporary casing inside an oversized permanent casing may be used at no additional expense to the Department. The permanent casing must have an inside diameter no more than 6 inches larger than the drilled shaft diameter specified in the Plans.

The following requirements apply:

1. Excavate and clean the materials from inside the permanent casing. Ensure all materials are removed from the inside wall of the permanent casing.
2. Install the temporary casing prior to excavating below the permanent casing tip elevation. The temporary casing must have a minimum internal diameter equal to the shaft diameter required in the Plans.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

3. If the temporary casing is advanced deeper than the minimum top of rock socket elevation as shown in the Plans, or the top of rock elevation if deeper, extend the rock socket length in accordance with 455-15.7.

4. Place concrete in accordance with 455-15.9.3 through the temporary casing. Do not allow concrete to fall or overflow into the annular space between the temporary and permanent casing.

5. After placement of the concrete, remove the temporary casing in accordance with 455-15.4, 455-15.7 and 455-17. During withdrawal of the temporary casing, maintain adequate concrete head in both the temporary and permanent casings to avoid breaching, caving, or contamination of the concrete.

Include details of this procedure in the DSIP for the Engineer's review and approval.

**455-15.6 Excavations:** When pilot holes and/or load tests are performed, the GFDEOR shall use the pilot hole and load test results when load tests are performed to determine the production tip elevations and/or the installation criteria of the drilled shafts. Drilled shaft construction shall not begin until the proposed shaft tip elevations are accepted by the Engineer.

**455-15.6.1 Pilot Hole:** When pilot holes are shown in the Plans core a pilot hole, prior to shaft excavation, in accordance with ASTM D2113 Standard Practice for Rock Core Drilling and Sampling of Rock for Site Excavation and the Department's Soils & Foundations Handbook using a double or triple wall core barrel through part or all of the shaft, to a minimum depth of 3 times the diameter of the drilled shaft below the tip elevation shown in the Plans. Prior to excavating load test shafts, provide pilot holes to a minimum depth of three times the diameter of the drilled shaft below the tip elevation designed for these shafts. For test holes, provide pilot holes prior to excavation, to a minimum depth of 5 feet below the tip of the test hole.

**455-15.6.2 Cores:** Take cores to determine the character of the material directly below the shaft excavation when pilot borings are not performed at the shaft location. Provide equipment to retrieve the core from a depth of 5 times the diameter of the drilled shaft below the bottom of the drilled shaft excavation in accordance with ASTM D2113 Standard Practice for Rock Core Drilling and Sampling of Rock for Site Excavation. Cut the cores with an acceptable core barrel to a minimum depth of 3 times the diameter of the drilled shaft below the bottom of the drilled shaft excavation after completing the shaft excavation, as directed by the Engineer.

For cores or pilot holes, use only a double or triple wall core barrel designed:

1. to cut a core sample from 4 inches to 6 inches in diameter, at least 5 feet in length, and,
2. so that the sample of material cored can be removed from the shaft excavation and the core barrel in an undisturbed state.

When called for in the Plans and approved by the Engineer, substitute Standard Penetration Tests (SPT) using a drill rig equipped with an automatic hammer for coring.

Provide areas for the disposal of unsuitable materials and excess materials as defined in 120-5 that are removed from shaft excavations, and dispose of them in a manner meeting all environmental requirements.

Furnish the additional drilled shaft concrete over the theoretical amount required to complete filling any excavations for shafts which are larger than required by the Plans or authorized by the Engineer, at no expense to the Department.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

**455-15.6.3 Production Shaft Tip Elevations:** After completion of load tests, pilot holes, rock cores and lab testing, the GFDEOR shall submit the required minimum rock socket lengths and shaft tip elevations to the Engineer in a signed and sealed letter for review and acceptance. This letter shall include the assumptions and geotechnical parameters used, the report of core borings of all pilot holes, rock core records, lab testing, load test reports prepared in accordance with 455-2.11, and numerical analysis and calculations. Submit this letter at least three working days, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, prior to beginning production shaft construction. Additional data or analysis may be required by the Engineer.

Production shaft lengths may be based on the load transfer characteristics measured during the load test. End bearing characteristics may be based on load test results if the properties of the material below the tips of the production shafts meet or exceed the strength of the materials below the tip of the test shaft. If the theoretical bearing strength of the material below the tips of the production shafts is less than the theoretical bearing strength of the materials below the tip of the test shaft, the production shafts shall be extended to meet design capacity by side shear only, unless the end bearing resistance of the weaker material is verified by additional load testing.

**455-15.7 Casings:** Ensure that casings are metal, of ample strength to withstand handling and driving stresses and the pressure of concrete and of the surrounding earth materials, and that they are smooth and water tight. Ensure that the inside diameter of casing is not less than the specified size of shaft except as provided below. The Department will not allow extra compensation for concrete required to fill an oversize casing or oversize excavation.

The Engineer will allow the Contractor to supply casing with an outside diameter equal to the specified shaft diameter (O.D. casing) provided additional shaft length is supplied at the shaft tip. Determine the additional length of shaft required by the following relationship:

$$\text{Additional Length} = \frac{(D_1 - D_2)L}{D_2}$$

where:

D<sub>1</sub>= casing inside diameter specified = shaft diameter specified

D<sub>2</sub>= casing inside diameter provided (D<sub>2</sub> = D<sub>1</sub> minus twice the wall thickness).

L= authorized shaft length below ground for temporary casing methods or below casing for permanent casing methods.

Bear all costs relating to this additional length including but not limited to the cost of extra excavation, extra concrete, and extra reinforcing steel.

Install and remove casing by rotating, exerting downward pressure, or with a vibratory hammer, unless otherwise shown in the Contract Documents. Remove all casings from shaft excavations except those used for the Permanent Casing Method. Ensure that the portion of casings installed under the Permanent Casing Method of construction below the shaft cut-off elevation remains in position as a permanent part of the drilled shaft. When casings that are to be removed become bound in the shaft excavation and cannot be practically removed, submit a proposed redesign to the Engineer for review and acceptance.

If temporary casing is advanced deeper than the minimum top of rock socket elevation shown in the Plans or actual top of rock elevation if deeper, withdraw the casing from the rock socket and overream the shaft. If the temporary casing cannot be withdrawn from the

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

rock socket before final cleaning, extend the length of rock socket below the authorized tip elevation one-half of the distance between the minimum top of rock socket elevation or actual elevation if deeper, and the temporary casing tip elevation.

Form drilled shafts extending through a body of water with permanent casings. When the shaft extends above ground or a body of water, the Contractor may form the exposed portion with removable casing, unless otherwise specified in the Plans. Remove the portion of metal casings between an elevation 2 feet below the lowest water elevation or 2 feet below ground whichever is higher and the top of shaft elevation after the concrete is cured. Remove casings to expose the concrete as required above in a manner which will not damage the drilled shaft concrete. Dismantle removable casings in accordance with the provisions of 455-17.5.

When practical, do not start the removal until completing all concrete placement in the shaft. Extract casing at a slow, uniform rate with the pull in line with the axis of the shaft. Withdraw temporary casings while the concrete remains fluid.

When conditions warrant, the Contractor may pull the casing in partial stages. Maintain a sufficient head of concrete above the bottom of the casing to overcome the hydrostatic pressure of water outside the casing. At all times maintain the elevation of the concrete in the casing high enough to displace the drilling slurry between the outside of the casing and the edge of the hole while removing the casing.

Expandable or split casings that are removable are not permitted for use below water.

#### **455-15.8 Slurry and Fluid in Excavation:**

**455-15.8.1 General:** Thoroughly premix the slurry in a mixing tank with clean fresh water prior to introduction into the shaft excavation. Introduce slurry before the excavation advances below the bottom of the casing. Ensure that the percentage of polymer or mineral admixture used to make the suspension is such as to maintain the stability of the shaft excavation. Provide adequate water or slurry tanks to perform the work in accordance with these Specifications. The Engineer will not allow excavated pits on projects requiring slurry tanks without the written permission of the Engineer. Take the steps necessary to prevent the slurry from “setting up” in the shaft, including but not limited to agitation, circulation, and adjusting the composition and properties of the slurry. Provide suitable offsite disposal areas and dispose of all waste slurry in a manner meeting all requirements pertaining to pollution.

For shafts to support sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures, polymer slurry may be mixed in the casing portion, in accordance with the APL approved instructions if the following conditions are met:

1. Contractor tests and verifies the polymer slurry meets the property requirements of 455-15.8.3, before continuing the excavation below the casing.
2. Polymer mix continues to be added as required below the bottom of the casing, to maintain the slurry properties during the excavation within compliance of 455-15.8.3.
3. Slurry sampling and testing is performed at intervals not exceeding one hour, in the middle of the excavation depth at the time of testing to verify the properties are maintained within compliance throughout the excavation.
4. If failing to demonstrate the properties are maintained within compliance of 455-15.8.3, discontinue this mixing method and use a slurry pre-mixed in a tank.

Provide a CTQP qualified drilled shaft inspector to perform control tests using suitable apparatus on the slurry mixture to determine the slurry and fluid properties as specified in sub-articles 455-15.8.2 to 455-15.8.4.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

Measure the viscosity of the freshly mixed slurry regularly as a check on the quality of the slurry being formed using an approved measuring device.

Perform tests from the fluid in the excavation to determine density, viscosity, and pH value to establish a consistent working pattern, taking into account the mixing process and blending of freshly mixed slurry and previously used slurry. Repeat tests to determine density, viscosity, and pH value at intervals not exceeding 2 hours during the first 8 hours slurry is in use and every 4 hours thereafter, including overnight, until concrete placement. Perform density, viscosity and pH tests again when the excavation reaches the midpoint. When the contractor operations require the shaft excavation to be interrupted and performed in multiple shifts, the continuous testing may be waived if the excavation at the time of suspension of the operations is not deeper than the bottom of the casing provided.

For shafts to support sign, signal, lighting, and ITS structures up to 5 ft diameter and up to 40 ft in depth, when the contractor operations require the shaft to be constructed in multiple shifts, the continuous testing may be waived if the excavation at the time of operations suspension is not deeper than the bottom of the casing provided, or if all the conditions below are met:

1. The shaft location does not pose a safety risk to the public, adjacent lane, utility pole, or any structure, if the excavation fails.
2. Slurry testing is performed at the time of suspending operations and at a time not exceeding 12 hours after that or at the time the operations resume whichever comes first. Testing shall be performed at intervals not exceeding 2 hours for the first 8 hours after resuming operations and every 4 hours thereafter.
3. Slurry testing shall be performed on at least two samples each time, one sample approximately three feet from the bottom and one sample from the middle of the excavation depth at the time the operations were suspended. The results must indicate the polymer slurry meets the viscosity requirements of 455-15.8.3. If this requirement is not met, do not continue without testing for more than 4 hours including the time periods between shifts.
4. The contractor performs soundings of the fluid level, at intervals of 15 minutes or longer, that demonstrate the fluid level is stable over two consecutive soundings.
5. If when resuming operations, slurry does not meet density, pH, or both, adjust the slurry to meet all property requirements of 455-15.8.3. Re-test slurry to verify properties meet the requirements, before resuming operations. Continue testing the slurry every 4 hours after resuming operations until completion of the excavation.

The Department may perform comparison tests as determined necessary during the mineral and polymer slurry operations.

If, at any time in the opinion of the Engineer, the wet construction method fails to stabilize the excavation discontinue this method of construction, backfill the excavation and submit modifications in procedure or alternate means of construction for approval.

**455-15.8.2 Mineral Slurry:** When mineral slurry is used in an excavation, use only processed attapulgit or bentonite clays with up to 2% (by dry weight) of added polymer. Use mineral slurry having a mineral grain size such that it will remain in suspension and having viscosity and gel characteristics to transport excavated material to a screening system. Use a percentage and specific gravity of the material to make a suspension able to maintain the stability of the excavation and to allow proper placement of concrete. Ensure that the material used to make the slurry is not detrimental to concrete or surrounding ground strata. During construction,

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

maintain the level of the slurry at a height sufficient to prevent caving of the hole. In the event of a sudden significant loss of slurry such that the slurry level cannot be maintained by adding slurry to the hole, backfill the excavation and delay the construction of that foundation until an alternate construction procedure has been approved.

Perform the following tests on the mineral slurry supplied to and in the shaft excavation and ensure that the results are within the ranges stated in the table below:

Table 455-2		
Item to be measured	Range of Results at 68°F fluid temperature	Test Method
Density	64 to 73 lb/ft <sup>3</sup> (in fresh water environment) 66 to 75 lb/ft <sup>3</sup> (in salt water environment)	Mud density balance: FM 8-RP13B-1
Viscosity	30 to 40 seconds	Marsh Cone Method: FM 8-RP13B-2
pH	8 to 11	Electric pH meter or pH indicator paper strips: FM 8-RP13B-4
Sand Content	4% or less	FM 8-RP13B-3

The Contractor may adjust the limits in the above table when field conditions warrant as successfully demonstrated in a test hole or with other methods approved by the Engineer. The Engineer must approve all changes in writing before the Contractor can continue to use them.

During construction, maintain the level of mineral slurry in the shaft excavation within the excavation and at a level not less than 4 feet above the highest expected piezometric water elevation along the depth of a shaft.

**455-15.8.3 Polymer Slurry:** A representative of the manufacturer must be on-site or available for immediate contact to assist and guide the construction of the first three drilled shafts at no additional cost to the Department. This representative must also be available for on-site assistance or immediate contact if problems are encountered during the construction of the remaining drilled shafts. Use polymer slurry only if the soils below the casing are not classified as organic, and the pH of the fluid in the hole can be maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Perform the following tests on the polymer slurry supplied to and in the shaft excavation and ensure that the results are maintained within the ranges stated in the table below:



Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

Table 455-3 Mixed Polymer Slurry Properties		
Item to be measured	Range of Results at 68°F fluid temperature	Test Method
Density	62 to 65 lb/ft <sup>3</sup> (fresh water) 64 to 67 lb/ft <sup>3</sup> (salt water)	Mud density balance: FM 8-RP13B-1
Viscosity: for bridges and main structure foundations	50 seconds to upper limit- defined by the APL	Marsh Cone Method: FM 8-RP13B-2
Viscosity: for miscellaneous structure foundations	50 seconds to upper limit recommended by the manufacturer based on soil type	March Cone Method: FM 8-RP13B-2
pH	Range published by the manufacturer for materials excavated	Electric pH meter or pH indicator paper strips: FM 8-RP13B-4
Sand Content	0.5% or less	FM 8-RP13B-3

Premix polymer slurry in accordance with the manufacturer's published procedures. Do not mix in the excavation as a means to prepare slurry. When approved by the GFDEOR, adjustments to slurry properties can be made in the excavation.

During construction, maintain the level of the slurry at a height sufficient to prevent caving of the hole and which should not be lower than 4 feet above the highest expected piezometric water elevation along the depth of the shaft.

Ensure the method of disposal meets the requirements of local authorities.

**455-15.8.4 Fluid in Excavation at Time of Concrete Placement:** When any fluid is present in any drilled shaft excavation, including shafts to support sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures, the applicable test methods and reporting requirements described in 455-15.8.1, 455-15.8.2 and 455-15.8.3 apply to tests of fluid in the shaft prior to placing the concrete.

When mineral slurries are used, ensure the properties at the time of concrete placement are within the acceptable ranges indicated in 455-15.8.2. When polymer slurries are used ensure the properties of the polymer slurry are within the following acceptable ranges at the time of concrete placement:

Table 455-4 Polymer Slurry Properties at Time of Concrete Placement		
Item to be measured	Range of Results at 68°F fluid temperature	Test Method
Density	62 to 65 lb/ft <sup>3</sup> (fresh water) 64 to 67 lb/ft <sup>3</sup> (salt water)	Mud density balance: FM 8-RP13B-1
Viscosity	50 seconds to upper limit defined by the APL	Marsh Cone Method: FM 8-RP13B-2

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

Table 455-4 Polymer Slurry Properties at Time of Concrete Placement		
Item to be measured	Range of Results at 68°F fluid temperature	Test Method
pH	Range published by the manufacturer for materials excavated	Electric pH meter or pH indicator paper strips: FM 8-RP13B-4
Sand Content	0.5% or less	FM 8-RP13B-3

Test samples of the fluid in the shaft from within 1 inch of the base of the shaft and from the middle of the shaft height for shafts up to 60 feet in depth. Test samples of the fluid in the shaft from within 1 inch of the base of the shaft and at intervals not exceeding 30 feet up the shaft for shafts deeper than 60 feet. Use a sampling tool designed to sample over a depth range of 12 inches or less. Take whatever action is necessary prior to placing the concrete to bring the fluid within the specification and reporting requirements, outlined in the tables in 455-15.8.2 and 455-15.8.3, except as follows:

The Engineer will not require tests for pH or viscosity, nor require the fluid to meet the minimum density specified in 455-15.8.2 and 455-15.8.3 when neither polymer nor mineral slurry has been introduced into the shaft excavation.

#### **455-15.9 Tremies and Pumps:**

**455-15.9.1 General:** The requirements of the applicable provisions of Section 400 will apply when using a tremie or a pump to place drilled shaft concrete.

**455-15.9.2 Dry Excavations:** Ensure that the tremie for depositing concrete in a dry drilled shaft excavation consists of a tube of solid construction, a tube constructed of sections which can be added and removed, or a tube of other accepted design. The Contractor may pass concrete through a hopper at the top of the tube or through side openings as the tremie is retrieved during concrete placement. Support the tremie so that the free fall of the concrete is less than 5 feet at all times. If the free falling concrete causes the shaft excavation to cave or slough, control the movement of concrete by reducing the height of free fall of the concrete and/or reducing the rate of flow of concrete into the excavation.

**455-15.9.3 Wet Excavations:** Construct the tremie or pump line used to deposit concrete beneath the surface of water so that it is water-tight and will readily discharge concrete. Construct the discharge end of the tremie or pump line to prevent water intrusion and permit the free flow of concrete during placement operations. Ensure that the tremie or pump line has sufficient length and weight to rest on the shaft bottom before starting concrete placement.

During placement operations, ensure that the discharge end of the tremie or pump line is within 6 inches of the bottom of the shaft excavation until at least 10 feet of concrete has been placed. Ensure the discharge end of the tremie or pump line is continuously embedded at least 10 feet into the concrete after 10 feet of concrete has been placed and until the casing is overpoured sufficiently to eliminate all contaminated concrete. Ensure that the free fall of concrete into the hopper is less than 5 feet at all times. Support the tremie so that it can be raised to increase the discharge of concrete and lowered to reduce the discharge of concrete. Do not rapidly raise or lower the tremie to increase the discharge of the concrete. Maintain a continuous flow of concrete and a positive pressure differential of the concrete in the tremie or pump line at all times to prevent water or slurry intrusion into the shaft concrete.

#### **455-15.10 Excavation and Drilling Equipment:**

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

**455-15.10.1 General:** All shaft excavation is unclassified shaft excavation. Overream the drilled shaft sidewall when necessary. These terms are defined in 455-15.10.2, 455-15.10.3, and 455-15.10.4, respectively.

Use excavation and drilling equipment having adequate capacity, including power, torque, and crowd (downthrust), and excavation and overreaming tools of adequate design, size, and strength to perform the work shown in the Plans or described herein. When the material encountered cannot be drilled using conventional earth augers and/or underreaming tools, provide special drilling equipment, including but not limited to rock augers, core barrels, rock tools, air tools, blasting materials, and other equipment as necessary to continue the shaft excavation to the size and depth required. In the event blasting is necessary, obtain all necessary permits. The Contractor is responsible for the effects of blasting on already completed work and adjacent structures. The Engineer must approve all blasting.

**455-15.10.2 Unclassified Shaft Excavation:** Unclassified shaft excavation is defined as all processes required to excavate a drilled shaft of the dimensions shown in the Contract Documents to the depth indicated in the Plans plus 15 feet or plus 3 shaft diameters, whichever is deeper, completed and accepted. Include in the work all shaft excavation, whether the material encountered is soil, rock, weathered rock, stone, natural or man-made obstructions, or materials of other descriptions.

**455-15.10.3 Unclassified Extra Depth Excavation:** Unclassified extra depth excavation is defined as all processes required to excavate a drilled shaft of plan dimensions which is deeper than the limits defined as unclassified shaft excavation.

**455-15.10.4 Drilled Shaft Sidewall Overreaming:** Drilled shaft sidewall overreaming is defined as the unclassified excavation required to roughen its surface or to enlarge the drilled shaft diameter due to softening of the sidewalls or to remove excessive buildup of slurry cake when slurry is used. Increase the shaft radius a minimum of 1/2 inch and a maximum of 3 inches by overreaming. The Contractor may accomplish overreaming with a grooving tool, overreaming bucket, or other suitable equipment.

Meet the limit for depth of sidewall overreaming into the shaft sidewall material and the elevation limits between which sidewall overreaming is required.

#### **455-15.11 Inspection of Excavations:**

**455-15.11.1 Dimensions and Alignment:** Provide equipment for checking the dimensions and alignment of each permanent shaft excavation. Determine the dimensions and alignment of the shaft excavation under the observation and direction of the Department. Generally, check the alignment and dimensions by any of the following methods as necessary:

1. Check the dimensions and alignment of dry shaft excavations using reference stakes and a plumb bob. Verify that the bottom of the hole is level.
2. Check the dimensions and alignment of casing when inserted in the excavation.

3. Use an acceptable caliper system
4. Insert any casing, rod or pipe assembly, or other device used to check dimensions and alignment into the excavation to full depth.

**455-15.11.2 Depth:** Generally, reference the depth of the shaft during drilling to appropriate marks on the Kelly bar or other suitable methods. Measure final shaft depths with a suitable weighted tape or other accepted methods after final cleaning.

**455-15.11.3 Shaft Inspection Device (SID):** Furnish all power and equipment necessary to inspect the bottom conditions of a drilled shaft excavation for bridge foundations

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

and to measure the thickness of bottom sediment or any other debris using a SID. Provide a means to position and lower the SID into the shaft excavation to enable the bell housing to rest vertically on the bottom of the excavation. Continuously videotape the inspection of each drilled shaft excavation after final cleaning. Clearly identify in the recordings by audio or other means, the location and items being observed.

Furnish a SID meeting the following requirements:

1. A remotely operated, high resolution, color video camera sealed inside a watertight bell housing.
2. Provides a clear view of the bottom inspection on a video monitor at the surface in real time.
3. Provides a permanent record of the entire inspection with voice annotation on a quality DVD with a resolution of not less than 720 x 480.
4. Provides a minimum field of vision of 110 square inches, with at least two graduated measuring devices to record the depth of sediment on the bottom of the shaft excavation to a minimum accuracy of 1/2 inch and a length greater than 1-1/2 inches.
5. Provides sufficient lighting to illuminate the entire field of vision at the bottom of the shaft in order for the operator and inspector to clearly see the depth measurement scale on the video monitor and to produce a clear recording of the inspection.
6. Provides a regulated compressed air or gas system to precisely adjust the drilling fluid level within the bell housing, and a pressurized water system to assist in determination of bottom sedimentation depth

Obtain the Engineer's approval of the device in advance of the first inspection contingent on satisfactory field performance. Notify the Engineer for approval before a different device is used for any subsequent inspection.

**455-15.11.4 Shaft Cleanliness Requirements:** Adjust cleaning operations so a minimum of 50% of the bottom of each shaft will have less than 1/2 inches of sediment at the time of placement of the concrete. Ensure the maximum depth of sedimentary deposits or any other debris at any place on the bottom of the shaft excavation does not exceed 1-1/2 inches. Determine shaft cleanliness by visual inspection for dry shafts. For bridge foundations, use a shaft inspection device for wet shafts. For drilled shaft foundations for sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures the use of a weighted tape is permitted to verify level and clean hole bottom conditions at the time of concrete placement.

When using slurry, meet the requirements of 455-15.8 at the time of concrete placement.

**455-15.11.4.1 Exceptions for Shafts for Sign, Signal, Lighting and ITS Structures:** Ensure the depth of sedimentary deposits or other debris does not exceed 1 inch over the bottom of the shaft when installing drilled shafts to support sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures.

**455-15.11.5 Time of Excavation:** Overream the sidewalls of any unclassified excavation work using mineral slurry lasting more than 36 hours (measured from the beginning of excavation for all methods except the Temporary or Permanent Casing Method, which begins at the time excavation begins below the casing) before placement of the concrete. Ensure that the minimum depth of overreaming the shaft sidewall is 1/2 inch and the maximum depth is 3 inches. Provide any overreaming required at no expense to the Department when exceeding the 36-hour limit.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

When using mineral slurry, adjust excavation operations so that the maximum time that slurry is in contact with the bottom 5 feet of the shaft (from time of drilling to concreting) does not exceed 12 hours. If exceeding the 12-hour time limit, overream the shaft socket or the full shaft when socket is not specified, at no additional expense to the Department prior to performing other operations in the shaft.

#### **455-16 Reinforcing Steel Construction and Placement.**

**455-16.1 Cage Construction and Placement:** Completely assemble and place as a unit the cage of reinforcing steel, consisting of longitudinal bars, ties, and cage stiffener bars, immediately after the Drilled Shaft Inspector inspects accepts the shaft excavation and immediately prior to placing concrete. Tie all intersections of drilled shaft reinforcing steel with cross ties or “figure 8” ties. Use double strand ties, ties with larger tie wire, U-bolts, or similar when necessary.

**455-16.2 Splicing Cage:** If the bottom of the constructed shaft elevation is lower than the bottom of the shaft elevation in the Plans, extend a minimum of one half of the longitudinal bars required in the upper portion of the shaft the additional length. Continue the tie bars for the extra depth, spaced on 2-foot centers, and extend the stiffener bars to the final depth. The Contractor may lap splice these bars or use unspliced bars of the proper length. Do not weld bars to the planned reinforcing steel unless shown in the Contract Documents.

For drilled shafts supporting sign, signal, lighting, and ITS structures, if the shaft cleaning operations result in excavating below the required tip elevation, the reinforcing steel cage does not need to be extended. The reinforcing steel cage may be spliced to rest on the bottom of the excavation or suspended in place from the top.

**455-16.3 Support, Alignment, and Tolerance:** Tie and support the reinforcing steel in the shaft so that the reinforcing steel will remain within allowable tolerances as specified in 455-20 and Section 415.

Ensure concentric spacing for the entire length of the cage. As a minimum, use centering devices consisting of wheels or other approved noncorrosive spacing devices within 3 feet of the bottom, within 6 feet of the top, and intervals not exceeding 10 feet along the cage length. Do not use block or wire type spacers. Ensure no permanent metallic elements will be within the concrete cover space. Use a minimum of one spacer per 30 inches of circumference of cage with a minimum of four at each level. Provide spacers at the bottom of the drilled shaft reinforcing cage as required to maintain the proper position of the cage.

For shafts to support sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures, when a casing with an inside diameter (I.D.) larger than the required shaft diameter is used, provide, within the portion of the oversized casing, centering devices specially dimensioned or other means to ensure the shaft, the cage and the upright are concentric. Provide spacers within 3 feet of the bottom and at intervals not exceeding 10 feet along the reinforcement, with a minimum of two levels of spacers below the bottom of the casing.

Check the elevation of the top of the steel cage before and after placing the concrete. If the cage is not within the specified tolerances, correct, and submit a revised DSIP to the Engineer for approval. Do not construct additional shafts until receiving approval from the Engineer.

**455-16.4 Nondestructive Integrity Testing Access Tubes:** Install access tubes full length in all drilled shafts from the tip of shaft to a point high enough above top of shaft to allow Thermal Integrity Testing for Drilled Shafts (TITDS) and Cross-Hole Sonic Logging (CSL)

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

testing, but not less than 30 inches above the top of the drilled shaft, ground surface or water surface, whichever is higher. Equally space tubes around circumference of drilled shaft. Securely tie access tubes to the inside of the reinforcing cage and align tubes to be parallel to the vertical axis of the center of the cage. Access tubes from the top of the reinforcing cage to the tip of the shaft shall be NPS 1-1/2 Schedule 40 black iron or black steel (not galvanized) pipe. Access tubes above the top of the reinforcing cage may be the same black iron or black steel pipe or Schedule 40 PVC pipe. Ensure that the access tubes are free from loose rust, scale, dirt, paint, oil and other foreign material. Couple tubes as required with threaded couplers, such that inside of tube remains flush. Seal the bottom and top of the tubes with threaded caps. The tubes, joints and bottom caps shall be watertight. Seal the top of the tubes with lubricated, threaded caps sufficient to prevent the intrusion of foreign materials. Stiffen the cage sufficiently to prevent damage or misalignment of access tubes during the lifting and installation of the cage. Exercise care in removing the caps from the top of the tubes after installation so as not to apply excess torque, hammering or other stress which could break the bond between the tubes and the concrete.

Provide the following number (rounded up to the next whole number of tubes) and configuration of access tubes in each drilled shaft based on the diameter of the shaft.

Table 455-5		
Shaft Diameter	Number of Tubes Required	Configuration around the inside of Circular Reinforcing Cage
36 to 48 inches	4	90 degrees apart
Greater than 48 inches	1 tube per foot of Shaft Diameter	360 degrees divided by the Number of Tubes

Insert simulated or mock probes in each access tube prior to concreting to ensure the serviceability of the tube. Fill access tubes with clean potable water and recap prior to concreting. Repair or replace any leaking, misaligned or unserviceable tubes as in a manner acceptable to the Engineer prior to concreting.

For method shafts for bridge foundations, in addition to the access tubes, provide embedded thermal wires equally spaced around the reinforcing cage.

For drilled shaft foundations requiring anchor bolts, verify access tubes will not interfere with anchor bolt installation before excavating the shaft. When access tube locations conflict with anchor bolt locations, move the access tube location plus or minus 2 inches along the inner circumference of the reinforcing cage.

For drilled shafts supporting sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures, if the shaft cleaning operations result in excavating below the required tip elevation, the access tubes do not need to be extended. If the reinforcing steel cage is suspended in place from the top rather than resting on the bottom of the excavation, clearly mark the top of shaft location on each tube.

When called for in the Contract Documents, provide embedded thermal wires and equipment to allow TITDS in accordance with ASTM D7949 Method B.

**455-17 Concrete Placement.**

**455-17.1 General:** Place concrete in accordance with the applicable portions of Sections 346 and 400, 455-15.2, 455-15.3, 455-15.4, 455-15.5, 455-15.8, 455-15.9, and the requirements herein.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

Place concrete as soon as possible after completing all excavation, cleaning the shaft excavation, inspecting and finding it satisfactory, and immediately after placing reinforcing steel. Continuously place concrete in the shaft to the top of the casing. Continue placing concrete after the casing is full until good quality concrete is evident at the top of the casing. Place concrete through a tremie or concrete pump using accepted methods. After the shaft is overpoured sufficiently to eliminate all contaminated concrete, additional concrete may be added to the shaft without the use of a tremie or pump in accordance with Section 400.

If the pressure head is lost during concrete placement for any reason, perform integrity testing at no expense to the Department.

Immediately after concreting, check the water levels in the CSL access tubes and refill as necessary. If tubes become unserviceable, core new holes in the drilled shaft as directed by the Engineer.

**455-17.2 Placement Time Requirements:** The elapsed time for placing drilled shaft concrete includes the concrete mixing and transit time, the concrete placement time, the time required to remove any temporary casing that causes or could cause the concrete to flow into the space previously occupied by the casing, and the time to insert any required column steel, bolts, weldments, etc. The elapsed time begins at the time the first truck load placed in the shaft is batched. Maintain a minimum slump of 5 inches throughout the elapsed time. Use materials to produce and maintain the required slump through the elapsed time that meets the class of concrete specified. Provide slump loss tests that demonstrate to the Engineer that the concrete will maintain a 5 inch or greater slump for the anticipated elapsed time before beginning drilled shaft construction.

**455-17.3 Forms:** When the top of shaft elevation is above ground or above water, form the portion of the shaft above ground and the portion of the shaft above water with a removable form or another suitable method to the dimensions shown in the Plans.

When the shaft extends above the ground through a body of water, the Contractor may form the portion through the water with removable forms except when the Permanent Casing Method is specified.

**455-17.4 Riser Blocks:** The Contractor may cast a riser block of equal diameter as the column and of a maximum height of 6 inches at the top of the completed shaft. When this option is chosen, extend any dowel steel above the top of shaft an additional 6 inches.

**455-17.5 Curing:** Cure the top surface in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section 400 and construct any construction joint area as shown in the Plans. Protect portions of drilled shafts exposed to a body of water from the action of water by leaving the forms in place for a minimum of seven days after casting the concrete. The Contractor may remove forms prior to seven days provided the concrete strength has reached 2,500 psi or greater as evidenced by cylinder breaks.

#### **455-17.6 Non-Destructive Testing of Drilled Shaft Integrity:**

**455-17.6.1 Thermal Integrity Testing for Drilled Shafts (TITDS):** Perform all TITDS testing in accordance with ASTM D7949. Test method shafts, load test shafts and all drilled shafts in bridge bents or piers considered nonredundant in the Plans, using TITDS. For all other drilled shafts supporting bridges and sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures, perform TITDS on any shaft suspected of containing defects. The Engineer may select shafts for TITDS based on observations in the field or the review of the drilled shaft logs.

Engage a qualified Specialty Engineer to supervise the TITDS. The qualified TITDS Specialty Engineer must have a minimum six-month experience of TITDS and

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

have a Florida Licensed Professional Engineer and supervise the collection and interpretation of data. The individual performing the TITDS in the field must work for the Specialty Engineer firm and have a minimum of six months experience of TITDS. The Contractor shall provide all necessary access and assistance to the TITDS Specialty Engineer to satisfactorily perform the testing.

After acceptance of production shafts by the Engineer, remove all water from the access tubes or core holes and fill the tubes or core holes with a structural non-shrink grout meeting the requirements of Section 934 from the bottom via tremie tube. Place the grout utilizing enough pressure to fill the tubes or core holes completely.

If the Contractor determines at any time during the non-destructive testing and evaluation of the drilled shaft that the drilled shaft should be replaced, no further testing or evaluation of that shaft is required.

**455-17.6.1.1 Equipment:** Furnish TITDS test equipment in accordance with ASTM D7949 as follows:

1. Provide thermal probes with four orthogonally oriented infrared sensors able to be used in 1.5 inch I.D. pipes.
2. Provide a computer based TITDS data acquisition system for display of signals during data acquisition.
3. Provide a computer based TITDS data acquisition system for display of signals during data acquisition.
4. Provide an air compressor and power supply with sufficient pressure to air lift the water from the access tubes.

**455-17.6.1.2 Procedure:** For non-bridge structures, pPerform TITDS testing between the minimum and maximum times shown below after the batching time of the first truck load placed in the drilled shaft, unless otherwise accepted by the Engineer.

Table 455-6		
Shaft Diameter (inches)	Minimum time (hours)	Maximum time (hours)
36-48	24	54
49-60	24	72
61-72	24	72
73-84	24	90
85-120	24	108

The Contractor may propose modifications in the above table for site specific and special concrete mix conditions, as demonstrated from lab and field testing and instrumentation. The Engineer must approve all changes to the testing times prior to the Contractor using them.

For bridges, prior to production drilled shaft and load test drilled shaft installation, perform TITDS in accordance with ASTM D7949 Method B to determine the temperature variability and time to peak temperature for each project specific concrete mix. Obtain temperature measurements at least every 15 minutes during curing on the method shafts piles. Submit the TITDS results within three working days of performing the tests, in accordance with 455-17, including the proposed temperature peak time established from the TITDS. The Engineer will review the results of the test and concur with the proposed peak time or revise it. After the peak time is established for each mix, perform TITDS in accordance with



Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

ASTM D7949 Method A on production drilled shafts and load test shafts, within the following times after batching the first truck:

$$\text{Minimum time (hours)} = \text{Peak time (hours)} - 8$$

$$\text{Maximum time (hours)} = \text{Peak time (hours)} + 4D$$

Where:

D= Drilled shaft diameter in ft.

Peak time: Time after batching the first truck load that was placed in the drilled shaft, at which the maximum temperature is observed.

Furnish information regarding the shaft, tube lengths and depths, construction dates, and other pertinent shaft installation observations and details to the Department at the time of testing. Verify access tube lengths and their condition in the presence of the Department, at the end of concrete placement. If the access tubes do not provide access over the full length of the shaft, repair the existing tube(s) or core additional hole(s), as directed by the Engineer, at no additional cost to the Department.

Just prior to inserting the thermal probe, remove water from the access tubes. Store the removed water in an insulated container for later replacement. Allow the thermal probe to acclimate in accordance with the equipment manufacturer recommendations. Continuously record temperatures at depth intervals of 3.0 inches or less from the top to the bottom of each access tube. Repeat the test at each access tube until two sets of data from the same access tube provide similar results. Return the warm water to the access tubes immediately after the testing has been completed.

Immediately report any potential defects indicated by lower temperature anomalies to the Engineer.

**455-17.6.1.3 Required TITDS Reports:** Submit the TITDS data and analysis to the Engineer in a signed and sealed report, together with all electronic data, within 48 hours of testing. The report shall include as minimum the following items:

1. Graphs displaying all temperature measurements and average temperature versus depth.
2. Indication of unusual temperatures, including cooler local deviations from the average at any depth from the overall average over the entire length.
3. A graph displaying the average temperature and theoretical temperature versus depth.
4. Variations in temperature between access tubes which may indicate variations in cage alignment.

5. When ASTM D7949 method B is used, include a chart indicating the variability of temperature vs. time, for all wires and the average. Submit the peak time in hours for the average temperature of the wires.

6. The calculated radius of the shaft throughout the entire depth.

7. Calculated concrete cover throughout the entire depth.

8. Shaft Details, Probe Details, Environmental Details, Tube Run

Selection and Shaft Adjustment Data that show the measurements, inputs and adjustments to the data. Screen captures of these pages from the "TIP Reporter" software will be acceptable.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

89. A conclusion stating whether the tested shaft is free from integrity defects, meets the minimum concrete cover and diameter requirements by the specifications and the cage is properly aligned. When anomalies are detected, include in the report a three-dimensional rendering of the shape of the shaft.

**455-17.6.1.4 Evaluation of TITDS Test Results:** Drilled shafts not meeting the minimum cover and diameter requirements, or having integrity defects, are not acceptable without an engineering analysis.

**455-17.6.1.5 Coring and/or Repair of Drilled Shafts:** If a drilled shaft is unacceptable based on the TITDS tests and other testing, or problems observed during drilled shaft construction, core the shaft to allow further evaluation and repair, or replace the shaft. If coring to allow further evaluation of the shaft and repair is chosen, one or more core samples shall be taken from each unacceptable shaft for full depth of the shaft or to the depth directed by the GFDEOR. The GFDEOR shall determine, with concurrence of the Engineer, the number, location, and diameter of the cores based on the results of the TITDS. Keep an accurate log of cores. Properly mark and place the cores in a crate showing the shaft depth at each interval of core recovery. Deliver the cores to the GFDEOR and submit the coring log to the Engineer. Perform strength testing by an AASHTO certified lab on portions of the cores that exhibit questionable concrete as determined by the GFDEOR. If the TITDS and coring indicate the shaft is defective, propose remedial measures for approval by the Engineer. Such improvement may consist of, but is not limited to correcting defective portions of the shaft, providing straddle shafts to compensate for capacity loss, or providing a replacement shaft. Repair all detected defects and conduct post repair integrity testing using horizontal and offset CSL testing and 3-D tomographic imaging as described in 455-17.6.2. Engage a Specialty Engineer to perform gamma-gamma density logging calibrated to 1-1/2 inch black iron access tubes, prior to and after the repair is performed, to verify the integrity of the shaft outside the reinforcing cage in the same locations where the repair was required. When straddle shafts or replacement shafts are used to correct a deficient foundation perform TITDS in accordance with 455-17.6.1 through 455-17.6.3 to verify integrity of these shafts. Submit all results to the Engineer within five days of test completion for acceptance. Perform all work described in this sub-article at no additional cost to the Department, and with no increase in Contract Time.

**455-17.6.2 Cross Sonic Logging (CSL) and Tomography:** When required by the Engineer perform CSL testing in accordance with ASTM D6760. Engage a qualified Specialty Engineer to perform the CSL testing. The qualified CSL Specialty Engineer must be a Professional Engineer in the State of Florida and have a minimum six-month experience of CSL testing, supervising the collection of CSL data and interpretation of CSL results. The individual performing the CSL testing in the field must work for the Specialty Engineer firm and have a minimum of six months experience of six months of CSL testing. The Contractor shall provide all necessary access and assistance to the CSL Specialty Engineer to satisfactorily perform the testing.

When a shaft contains four tubes, test every possible tube combination. For shafts with five or more tubes, test all pairs of adjacent tubes around the perimeter, and one-half of the remaining number of tube combinations, as chosen by the Engineer. Pull the probes simultaneously, starting from the bottoms of the tubes, over an electronic depth measuring device. Perform the CSL tests with the source and receiver probes in the same horizontal plane. Continuously record CSL signals at depth intervals of 2-1/2 inches or less from the bottom of the tubes to the top of each shaft. Remove all slack from the cables prior to pulling to provide

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

accurate depth measurements in the CSL records. When the measurements indicate a 30% or greater reduction in velocity between one or more pairs take one or two concrete cores to allow further evaluation and repair, or replace the shaft as directed by the Engineer. Determine the location of the concrete cores by performing 3D tomographic analysis using the CSL measurements. The core depths shall be at least 5 feet deeper than the bottom of the anomaly determined by the 3D tomography analysis or full depth if the anomaly is within 5 feet of the bottom of the shaft. The Engineer may accept a drilled shaft without rock cores if an EAR demonstrates that the anomaly does not affect the structural and the geotechnical axial capacity, the structural and geotechnical lateral stability, the settlement behavior of the shaft, and that the anomaly will not impact the durability of the foundation.

When repairs are done, perform CSL measurements in all tube pair combinations with the source and receiver running at the same horizontal plane and at the vertical offsets of 45 degrees above and below. Perform all measurements including the offset measurements from the point where the higher probe is at least 5 feet below the lower limit of the repaired zone to the point where the lower probe is at least 5 feet above the upper limit of the repaired zone. Offset measurements must be as follows: plus 45 degrees (source below receiver) and minus 45 degrees (source above receiver). Use the measurements of these two offsets in combination with the horizontal measurements to perform the 3D tomography. Provide the CSL measurements, CSL logs and 3D tomographic analysis at no additional cost to the Department.

After acceptance of production shafts by the Engineer, fill the tubes or core holes with a structural non-shrink grout in accordance with 455-17.6.1.

If the Contractor determines at any time during the non-destructive testing and evaluation of the drilled shaft that the drilled shaft should be replaced, no further testing or evaluation of that shaft is required.

**455-17.6.2.1 Required CSL Reports:** Present the CSL data and analysis results to the Engineer in a signed and sealed report. Include CSL logs with analyses of first pulse arrival time (FAT) versus depth and pulse energy/amplitude versus depth. Present a CSL log for each tube pair tested with any defect zones identified on the logs and discussed in the test report as appropriate. When offset measurements are required, perform 3D tomographic analysis using all offset data, and include color coded 3D tomographic images in the report.

**455-17.6.2.2 Evaluation of Cross-Hole Sonic Logging Testing:** Drilled shafts with velocity reduction exceeding 30% are not acceptable without an engineering analysis.

**455-17.6.2.3 Coring and/or Repair of Drilled Shafts:** If a drilled shaft is unacceptable based on the CSL Testing and tomographic analyses and other testing, core the shaft to allow further evaluation and repair, or replace the shaft in accordance with 455-17.6.1.5.

If repairs are performed or additional shafts installed to correct a deficient foundation, conduct integrity testing and submit the results to the Engineer in accordance with 455-17.6.1.5.

## **455-18 Method Shafts.**

The Engineer will use the construction of method shafts (test holes) to determine if the methods and equipment used by the Contractor are sufficient to produce a shaft excavation meeting the requirements of the Contract Documents. During method shaft excavations, the Engineer will evaluate the ability to control dimensions and alignment of excavations within tolerances; to seal the casing into impervious materials; to control the size of the excavation under caving conditions by the use of slurry or by other means; to properly clean the completed

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

shaft excavation; to construct excavations in open water areas; to determine the elevation of ground water; to place reinforcing steel and concrete meeting the requirements of these Specifications within the prescribed time frame; and to execute any other necessary construction operation. Revise the methods and equipment as necessary at any time during the construction of the method shaft when unable to satisfactorily carry out any of the necessary operations described above or when unable to control the dimensions and alignment of the shaft excavation within tolerances.

Successfully construct method shafts out of permanent position at the location shown in the Plans. Ensure the diameter and depth of the method shafts are the same diameter and maximum depth as the production drilled shafts. When there are shafts both on land and in water, successfully construct a method shaft for each condition. When there is more than one size of drilled shaft, perform a method shaft for the largest diameter for each condition. Reinforce the method shaft unless otherwise directed in the Contract Documents. Conduct integrity tests on each shaft, using both cross-hole sonic logging and TITDS test methods. Fill the method shaft with concrete in the same manner production drilled shafts will be constructed. Backfill method shafts which are not filled with concrete with suitable soil in a manner satisfactory to the Engineer. Leave concreted method shafts in place, except remove the top of the shaft to a depth of 2 feet below the finished graded surface. Use the same procedure for shafts constructed in water. Restore the disturbed areas at the sites of method shafts drilled out of position as nearly as practical to their original condition. When the Contractor fails to demonstrate to the Engineer the adequacy of his methods or equipment, and alterations are required, make appropriate modifications and provide additional method shafts at no expense to the Department. Make no changes in methods or equipment after initial acceptance without the consent of the Engineer.

A separate method shaft is not required for drilled shafts installed under sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures. The first production shaft will serve as a method shaft for determining acceptability of the installation method.

#### **455-19 Test Bells.**

Test bells are no longer used.

#### **455-20 Construction Tolerances.**

Meet the following construction tolerances for drilled shafts:

1. Ensure that the top of the drilled shaft is no more than 3 inches laterally in the X or Y coordinate from the position indicated in the Plans.
2. Ensure that the vertical alignment of the shaft excavation does not vary from the alignment shown in the Plans by more than 1/4 inches per foot of depth.
3. After placing all the concrete, ensure that the top of the reinforcing steel cage is no more than 6 inches above and no more than 3 inches below plan position.
4. Ensure that the reinforcing cage is concentric with the shaft within a tolerance of 1-1/2 inches. Ensure that concrete cover is a minimum of 4-1/2 inches unless shown otherwise in the Plans.
5. Ensure that the minimum diameter of the drilled shaft is not smaller than the specified diameter minus 1 inch. All casing diameters shown in the Plans refer to I.D. (inside diameter) dimensions. However, the Contractor may use casing with an outside diameter equal to the specified shaft diameter if the extra length described in 455-15.7 is provided. In this case, ensure that the I.D. of the casing is not smaller than the specified shaft diameter minus 1 inch.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

The Contractor may elect to provide a casing larger in diameter than shown in the Plans to facilitate meeting this requirement. When conditions are such that a series of telescoping casings are used, provide the casing sized to maintain the minimum shaft diameters listed above.

6. Except when a butting or encroaching within a sidewalk, ensure that the top elevation of the drilled shaft concrete has a tolerance of plus 1 inch and minus 3 inches from the top of shaft elevation shown in the Plans.

7. When abutting or encroaching within a sidewalk, ensure that the top elevation of the drilled shaft is flush with the sidewalk surface.

8. The dimensions of casings are subject to American Petroleum Institute tolerances applicable to regular steel pipe.

9. Use excavation equipment and methods designed so that the completed shaft excavation will have a flat bottom. Ensure that the cutting edges of excavation equipment are normal to the vertical axis of the equipment within a tolerance of plus or minus 3/8 inches per foot of diameter.

#### **455-21 Drilled Shaft Excavations Constructed out of Tolerance.**

Do not construct drilled shaft excavations in such a manner that the concrete shaft cannot be completed within the required tolerances. The Contractor may make corrections to an unacceptable drilled shaft excavation by any combination of the following methods:

1. Overdrilling the shaft excavation to a larger diameter to permit accurate placement of the reinforcing steel cage with the required minimum concrete cover.

2. Increasing the number and/or size of the steel reinforcement bars.

When the tolerances are not met, the Contractor may propose a redesign to incorporate shafts installed out of tolerance into caps or footings. Incorporate shafts installed out of tolerance at no expense to the Department. Ensure the Contractor's Engineer of Record performs any redesign and signs and seals the redesign drawings and computations. Do not begin any proposed construction until the redesign has been reviewed and accepted by the Engineer.

Backfill any out of tolerance shafts in an accepted manner when necessary until the redesign is complete and accepted. Furnish additional materials and work necessary, including engineering analysis and redesign, to effect corrections of out of tolerance drilled shaft excavations at no expense to the Department.

#### **455-22 Recording, Certification and Verification.**

**455-22.1 Recording:** Inspect and record all the drilled shaft operations. Keep a set of drilled shaft logs for each drilled shaft including test holes, load test shafts and production shafts. Use the Department's Drilled Shaft Log forms to record the information. Submit to the Engineer drilled shaft logs and concrete logs within 24 hours of concrete placement. The documentation shall include the drilled shaft installation procedures, actual dimensions and quantities of the materials used, fluid testing results, bottom cleanliness inspection results, sequencing, as well as any problems encountered during construction and concrete placement. Allow two working days, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, for the Department to review the data and determine whether shafts will be selected for CSL integrity testing. Perform CSL testing on any shaft selected by the Department at this stage in accordance with 455-17.

**455-22.2 Foundation Certification Packages:** Submit certification packages of drilled shaft foundations to the Engineer prior to Verification Testing. Each Foundation Certification Package shall include a letter signed and sealed by the GFDEOR certifying the drilled shafts

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

have the required axial capacity, torsional capacity, uplift capacity, overturning and lateral stability, integrity deficiencies have been corrected, settlements will not affect the functionality of the structure, and that the inspection of the drilled shaft installation was performed under the supervision of the GFDEOR. Include all shaft excavation and concreting logs, videos of visual shaft bottom inspections, all **TITDS and** CSL reports and electronic data, gamma-gamma testing reports, slurry test data, supplemental testing data, analyses for the foundation unit and the concrete strength test results of the lots sampled. The certification shall not be contingent on any future repair or testing, or any approval by the Engineer. Submit a separate Foundation Certification Package for each foundation unit. A foundation unit is defined as all the shafts within one bent or pier for a specific bridge for each phase of construction. For sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures, a foundation unit is defined as all the shafts within one intersection/interchange, for each phase of an intersection/interchange or all the shafts included in the structure.

**455-22.3 Verification:** The Engineer reserves the right to observe and perform verification testing on any drilled shafts during any phases of the foundation operation.

Provide safe access and cooperate with the Engineer for verification of the drilled shafts, both during construction of shafts and after submittal of the certification package. The Engineer may verify the bottom cleanliness by over the shoulder review of the Contractor's visual inspection methods and/or by independent means. The Engineer may verify properties of drilling fluid at the time of concreting.

Within one working day, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, of receipt of the Foundation Certification Package, the Engineer will examine the Certification Package and determine whether shafts in that foundation unit will be selected for Verification Testing. The Engineer may select every shaft for Verification Testing if defects are suspected, or choose not to require verification testing on any or all foundation units. The Engineer will provide equipment and personnel as needed for Verification Testing. Methods used for Verification Testing of a completed shaft are at the discretion of the Engineer and may include coring, cross-hole sonic logging, gamma-gamma density logging, low-strain dynamic integrity testing, or other methods.

After Verification Testing for a foundation unit is performed, the Engineer will provide the results within five working days, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays. Integrity testing access tubes shall not be grouted and construction of footings, caps, columns or any superstructure elements shall not occur until the Engineer has notified the Contractor that additional Verification Testing is not required.

If any shaft is found to be deficient, correct the deficiency (i.e. repair or replace the shaft) and/or modify the design to compensate for the deficiency. After the deficiency is corrected, retest and recertify the shaft. The Engineer may then perform additional Verification Testing. In case of disagreement of test results, the Engineer's results will be final and used for determination of acceptance.

ARTICLE 455-23 is deleted:

#### **455-24 Basis of Payment.**

Contract Price includes all labor, equipment and materials required for furnishing, installing, and certifying drill shaft foundations, in place and accepted. No separate payment will be made for any items of work associated with construction of drill shaft foundations.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

## **D. SPREAD FOOTINGS**

### **455-25 Description.**

Construct reinforced concrete spread footing foundations, including dewatering when necessary, excavating to the required limits, compacting the underlying soil as required, and constructing seals when required.

### **455-26 General Requirements.**

Meet the following requirements for all spread footings:

1. Perform excavations, including the removal of all material, of whatever nature, necessary for the construction of spread footings. As used herein, the term "soil" shall constitute any material, whether soil, rock, or other materials.
2. Slope excavations as required, or support them with sheeting, and shore them if necessary, to provide a safe excavation that is adequate for construction purposes and that will adequately protect any existing adjacent structures.
3. Ensure that the foundation soils are firm, stable, and meet or exceed the design bearing and compressibility requirements before constructing the footings or any required seals. The Department may elect to use any type of tests to evaluate the foundation soils that is appropriate in the opinion of the Engineer. Cooperate with the Engineer in the evaluation of the foundation soils, and assist the Engineer as necessary to provide access to the site.
4. Modify the elevation of the bottom of footings or seals and the depth of over-excavation shown in the Plans as may be necessary to secure a satisfactory foundation.
5. Place all spread footing concrete in the dry.

Provide safe access and cooperate with the Engineer to perform verification of the spread footing construction.

#### **455-26.1 Foundation Certification Packages:**

Submit two copies of a letter signed and sealed by the GFDEOR to the Engineer certifying each spread footing has the required axial, lateral and torsional capacity, overturning stability and integrity; and settlement will not affect the functionality of the structure. A separate Foundation Certification Package must be submitted for each foundation unit. A foundation unit is defined as a spread footing. Spread footings must be certified and the certification accepted before continuing with the construction of any structural element above the foundation unit. Correct all integrity problems and non compliance issues prior to submitting the certification packages. The certification shall not be contingent on any future repair or testing, or any approval by the Engineer.

Within one working day, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, after receipt of the Foundation Certification Package, the Engineer will examine the records and determine the acceptability of the shallow foundation.

### **455-27 Monitor Existing Structures.**

Monitor existing structures in accordance with Section 108.

### **455-28 Dewatering.**

The Contractor is responsible for the design, installation, and operation of an adequate dewatering system to dewater excavations for spread footings. Use a well point or well system. Submit a dewatering plan to the Engineer for his records before beginning construction.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

Use well points or wells where the piezometric water level is above an elevation 3 feet below the bottom of the excavation. Maintain the water table 3 feet or more below the maximum depth of excavation. Provide continuous dewatering until completing construction of the footing and backfill the excavation at least 3 feet above the piezometric water table elevation. In the event of a dewatering failure, determine the effects of such a failure on the foundation soils, and take whatever corrective measures are required at no additional expense to the Department. When discontinuing dewatering, decrease the rate of pumping, allowing the water level to rise slowly. Use a rate, in feet per hour, that the water table is allowed to rise equal to the total number of feet the water table was lowered, divided by ten hours or a rate of 1 foot per hour, whichever is less.

Install one piezometer well approximately every 15 feet of footing perimeter. Provide a minimum of two piezometers at locations within 2 feet from the outside of the footing perimeter. Install piezometer wells to a depth at least 10 feet below the bottom of footing elevation. Measure water elevation in the piezometer wells prior to excavation and at 12-hour intervals between excavation and discontinuation of dewatering. Maintain the piezometers in working condition throughout the dewatering process, and repair or replace them when damaged at no expense to the Department.

#### **455-29 Excavations**

If the excavation must be carried deeper than shown in the Plans to obtain a satisfactory foundation, revise the Plans.

**455-29.1 Dry Excavations:** Dry excavations are excavations that can be completed without the need to lower the piezometric water level. Perform dry excavations when the piezometric water level at the time of construction is and, in the opinion of the Engineer, will remain at least 3 feet below the bottom of the authorized excavation or over-excavation. Demonstrate to the Engineer that a stable excavation can be made without dewatering. Make adequate provisions to divert surface runoff and to collect and remove any water entering the excavation.

Excavate to the bottom of footing, to the over-excavation limits shown in the Plans or as required for forming. Save any suitable materials for backfill. Provide areas for the disposal of all unsuitable materials, and dispose of them in a satisfactory method. Compact the foundation soils below the footing as described herein before constructing the footing.

**455-29.2 Dewatered Excavations:** Dewatered excavations are excavations made after first lowering the piezometric water level with wellpoints or wells. Perform dewatering as described in 455-28. Excavate in the dry after lowering of the water table.

When dewatering is required, the Contractor may excavate within 3 feet of the ground water table before dewatering begins if the dewatering system is operating and the Contractor has demonstrated that the water level has been lowered to and maintained at acceptable limits. Where large excavations require stage lowering of the water table (additional wellpoint systems installed at lower elevations), the Contractor may continue excavating as long as the water elevation is maintained at least 3 feet below the excavation.

Ensure that surface runoff is diverted from the excavation. Compact the foundation soils as shown in the Plans or as described herein before constructing the footing.

**455-29.3 Wet Excavations:** Wet excavations are excavations made below the existing water table without prior dewatering. When the Plans show a cofferdam and seal, perform the



Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

excavation in the wet. Maintain the water level during excavation at or above the water level outside the cofferdam.

Place the seal directly upon the foundation soils or rock when using wet excavations. Do not compact foundation soils for wet excavations. Ensure that the foundation soils or rock are disturbed as little as practical. Remove all loose or disturbed materials before placing the seal concrete.

#### **455-30 Fill or Backfill.**

In all excavations, including over-excavations below the footing, use only fill or backfill materials considered Select in accordance with Standard Plans, Index 120-001. Ensure the material is free of rubble, debris, or rocks that would prevent uniform placement and compaction. Ensure the material below the top of the footing is free of Recycled Asphalt Pavement (RAP). Perform sampling and testing in accordance with 120-10.1.4, except replace FM 1-T99 with FM 1-T180.

#### **455-31 Compaction and Density Requirements.**

Compact the bottom of the excavation with suitable equipment. Compact the soil beneath footing excavation (whether dug to the bottom of footing or over-excavated) to a density not less than 95% of the maximum density as determined by FM 1-T180 for a minimum depth of 2 feet below the bottom of the excavation or to the depth shown in the Plans before backfilling begins. For every 500 feet of excavation or isolated compaction operation, perform two Quality Control (QC) density tests with a 12 inch depth of measurement: one QC density test with the gauge placed at an elevation of 1 foot below the bottom of the excavation and one QC density test with the gauge placed at the bottom of the excavation in accordance with FM 1-T238. Compact the backfill in footing excavations which have been over-excavated to a density not less than 95% of the maximum density as determined by FM 1-T180. Ensure that the maximum lift thickness after compaction does not exceed 6 inches. For every 500 feet of backfill or isolated compaction operation, perform at least one QC density test. The Engineer will conduct one density verification test per every four QC test with a minimum of one density test below the bottom of the excavation and one density test in the backfill. Verification comparison criteria and resolution procedures will be in accordance with 120-10.4 except replace FM 1-T99, with FM 1-T180.

For compaction, use a suitable heavy vibratory roller with a static drum weight of at least 4 tons. Compact each lift to the required density. Also, compact the final lift below the footing with a suitable sled vibratory compactor to remove any upper disturbance caused by the drum roller. When conditions require use of smaller compaction equipment, obtain the Engineer's acceptance for the equipment, and reduce the lift thickness to achieve the required density.

Perform backfilling to the existing surface or finished graded surface, as required by the Plans in the immediate vicinity by suitable mechanical compactors weighing less than 1,000 pounds. The Contractor may compact backfill located more than 15 feet away from the exterior periphery of the footing with heavier compactors. Do not place backfill on the footing until the Engineer has given permission and until the concrete is at least seven days old.

When the plans indicate spread footing abutments on mechanically stabilized earth (MSE) walls, place and compact the backfill material underneath the footing in accordance with the requirements of 548-8.5. Meet the density requirements of 548-9.4.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

**455-32 Forming.**

Form spread footings if it cannot be demonstrated that the natural soil or rock is strong enough to prevent caving during construction. For forms, meet the applicable requirements of 400-5. When forms are not required, meet the requirements of 400-5.4.4.

**455-33 Materials.**

**455-33.1 Concrete:** Meet the requirements of Section 346.

**455-33.2 Reinforcing Steel:** Meet the requirements of Section 415. For spread footing reinforcing steel, use Grade 60.

**455-34 Reinforcing Steel Placement.**

Place and fasten reinforcing steel for footings according to the applicable provisions of 415-5.

**455-35 Concrete Placement.**

**455-35.1 Placement:** Place all footing concrete in the dry and according to the applicable provisions of Section 400. Do not construct joints in footings.

**455-35.2 Finish:** After placing and consolidating the concrete, strike-off the top surface to the grades shown in the Contract Documents, leaving the surface smooth and free of undesirable cavities and other defects. Do not provide a special finish unless the footing will be visible after construction, in which case, meet the applicable provisions of Section 400.

**455-35.3 Curing:** Provide continuous-moisture-curing for footings. For cover materials, use clean sand, sawdust, or other materials accepted by the Engineer. Continuously wet the cover materials for a period of 72 hours.

ARTICLE 455-36 is deleted:

**455-37 Basis of Payment.**

Contract Price includes all labor, equipment and materials required for furnishing, installing, and certifying the completed foundations, in place and accepted. No separate payment will be made for any items of work associated with spread footing construction.

**E. STRUCTURES (OTHER THAN BRIDGE)  
FOUNDATIONS-AUGER CAST PILES****455-38 Description.**

Furnish and install auger cast piles (ACP) or augered cast-in-place (ACIP) piles used for structural support, other than bridge foundations.

ACP piles are defined as a foundation made by rotating a hollow-stem auger into the ground to the required pile depth with sufficient crowd (downward thrust) to prevent mining of the soil. A fluid cement grout is injected through the auger shaft under continuous positive pressure as the auger is being withdrawn. A reinforcing steel cage, as specified, is inserted into the column of fluid grout following the completion of grout placement.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

#### **455-39 General Requirements.**

**455-39.1 Contractor's Operations:** Submit an Auger Cast Pile Installation Plan in accordance with 455-47. Prior to the start of production piles, demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Engineer, the dependability of the equipment, techniques, and source of materials by construction of a demonstration pile.

Provide safe access and cooperate with the Engineer to perform verification of the auger cast pile installation.

**455-39.2 Monitor Existing Structures:** Monitor existing structures in accordance with Section 108.

#### **455-40 Materials.**

Meet the following material requirements:

Portland Cement and Blended Cement .....	Section 921
Supplementary Cementitious Materials .....	Section 929
Fine Aggregate (Sand)* .....	Section 902
Admixtures.....	Section 924
Water.....	Section 923
Fluidifier** .....	ASTM C 937
Reinforcing Steel.....	Section 415

\* The Engineer will only permit Silica Sand except as provided in 902-5.2.3.

\*\* The fluidifier shall not contain chlorides.

#### **455-41 Grout Mix Proportions.**

Use a grout mix consisting of a mixture of cementitious materials, admixtures, sand and water. Proportion and mix to produce a grout capable of maintaining the solids in suspension without appreciable bleed water which may be pumped without difficulty and fill open voids in the adjacent soils and rock. The grout mix may include a fluidifier used in accordance with the manufacturer's technical representative. Proportion these materials to produce a hardened grout of the required strength.

#### **455-42 Mixing and Pumping Cement Grout.**

Meet the following requirements:

1. Only use pumping equipment accepted by the Engineer in the preparation and handling of the grout. Before using the mixers, remove all oil or other rust inhibitors from the mixing drums, stirring mechanisms, and other portions of the equipment in contact with the grout.

2. Use a quantity of water and mixing time that will produce a homogenous grout having an efflux of not less than 21 seconds, when tested with a flow cone in accordance with ASTM D6449. Reject loads with efflux of less than 21 seconds. Notify the production facility to adjust the mix design. Calibrate the flow cone in accordance with ASTM D6449. Conduct the calibration initially before its first use and as directed by the Engineer, when there is a question of the flow cone's accuracy.

Technicians performing the efflux test must take the Auger Cast Pile course and pass the final examination to be qualified to test for any auger cast pile installations in the field. Assist the Engineer in verifying the technicians meet these requirements.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

Conduct test for efflux time at the beginning of each day's grouting operation and as directed by the Engineer to ensure the Specification requirements are met.

3. Mix the grout at least one minute. If agitated continuously, the grout may be held in the mixer or agitator for a period not exceeding 2.5 hours at grout temperatures below 70°F; two hours for temperatures from 70°F to 100°F. Do not place grout when its temperature exceeds 100°F. If there is a lapse in the operation of grout injection, recirculate the grout through the pump, or through the mixer drum or agitator.

4. Use mixers capable of combining components into a thoroughly mixed and uniform mass, free from balls or lumps and capable of discharging the grout with a satisfactory degree of uniformity. The Engineer's acceptance of grout mixers and all other equipment will be contingent on proper performance during construction of the demonstration pile and subsequent production work.

5. Use a screen no larger than 3/4 inch mesh between the mixer and pump to remove large particles which might clog the injection system.

6. Use a positive displacement piston type grout pump equipped with a pressure gauge, capable of developing displacing pressures at the pump not less than 350 psi. The pump must be appropriately sized to the pile diameter. Provide a grout pressure gage in clear view of the equipment operator. Provide a second pressure gauge near the drill rig where it can be observed by the Engineer.

7. Accurately monitor the volume and pressure of the grout flow. Provide a pump stroke counter in good working condition on the grout pump. Perform a calibration test of the pumping equipment, prior to construction of the demonstration piles, to determine the average volume of grout for every pump stroke, in accordance with FM 5-612. When the Contractor's installation procedure includes priming the grout pump, grouting lines or auger conduit after drilling the hole, perform a priming demonstration to determine the minimum number of pump strokes required to deliver fresh grout throughout the entire system and flow from the grout injection hole at the bottom of the auger. Perform this grout priming demonstration prior to any calibration test.

The Engineer may require additional pump calibrations and priming demonstrations when the pump is repaired, a different pump is used, when the length of the grout lines or hollow auger lengths increase from previous piles for which priming demonstrations were performed and at any time the Engineer determines the grout pump performance may have changed.

#### **455-43 Testing Cement Grout.**

Prepare three 4 inches x 8 inches cylinders for each LOT in accordance with ASTM C31, except pour grout in a single lift into cylinders molds without rodding. Plastic properties in accordance with ASTM C31 are not required. A LOT is defined as the lesser of 50 cubic yards of cement grout placed or one day of pile placement. Prepare three additional QC "hold" cylinders on the LOT selected by the Engineer for Verification. Provide curing facilities for all QC and Verification test cylinders in accordance with ASTM C31. Test the cylinders at 28 days, in accordance with ASTM C39.

When one of the three QC cylinders from a LOT is lost, missing, damaged or destroyed, determination of compressive strength will be made by averaging the remaining two cylinders. If more than one QC cylinder from a LOT is lost, missing, damaged or destroyed, core the structure at no additional expense to the Department to determine the compressive strength. Acceptance of LOT may be based on verification data at the discretion of the Engineer. Obtain the approval of

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

the Engineer to core, and of the core location prior to coring. Repair core holes after samples are taken with a product meeting the approval of the Engineer, at no additional cost to the Department.

For each QC cylinder that is lost, missing, damaged or destroyed, payment for that LOT will be reduced by \$750.00 per 1,000 psi of the specified design strength [Example: For  $f'_c=5,500$  psi, and the loss of two auger cast pile grout QC cylinders that have no verification data will require the element to be cored and a pay reduction will be assessed  $(5,500 \text{ psi} / 1,000 \text{ psi}) \times \$750 \times 2 = \$8,250$ ]. This reduction will be in addition to any pay adjustment for low strength.

The Engineer will cast three verification cylinders and three “hold” cylinders from one of every four consecutive Lots, randomly selected. The Engineer will compare QC and Verification results in accordance with Section 346. If the results do not compare, the Engineer will initiate a Resolution Investigation in accordance with Section 346

Personnel making/curing grout cylinders shall be certified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician Grade I. Personnel performing tests on hardened properties of grout, such as strength determination of cylinders or beams, shall be certified as ACI Concrete Strength Testing Technician.

All low strength cement grout accepted by the Engineer will be subject to reduced payment as follows: \$0.80 per cubic yard for each 10 psi of strength test value below the specified minimum strength. The Engineer will use the average compressive strength of the LOT tests for the computation of this pay reduction.

The Engineer will compute the volume of grout for which the reduction will be applied as 115% of the theoretical volume of the auger cast pile diameter required in the Contract Documents. Reduction in pay will be applied to the entire length of all piles containing low strength cement grout, in any quantity. The quantity of cement grout affected by the payment reduction may exceed the quantity of cement grout contained in the LOT.

When a cement grout acceptance strength test falls more than 500 psi below the specified minimum strength, perform one of the following:

1. Remove and replace the piles affected fully or partially by the low strength LOT at no additional cost to the Department, or
2. Submit a structural analysis performed by the Contractor’s Engineer of Record. If the results of the analysis, approved by the Department, indicate adequate strength to serve the intended purpose with adequate durability, the concrete may remain in place.

Otherwise, abandon and install additional piles to the foundation, or remove and replace the piles affected fully or partially by the low strength LOT of grout at no additional cost to the Department. When installing additional piles to resolve the strength deficiency, submit a foundation redesign to add piles into pile caps or footings, at no expense to the Department in accordance with 455-46.

#### **455-44 Pile Installation.**

Meet the following requirements:

1. Locate the piles as shown on the drawings.
2. Should soft, compressible muck, organics, clay or other unsuitable materials (non A-1, A-3, A-2-4 or limestone materials) be encountered, remove the unsuitable material to a maximum depth of 5 feet and a radial distance around the pile centerline of two pile diameters unless otherwise indicated in the Plans. Backfill with clean granular backfill materials (A-1, A-3,

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

A-2-4), placed and compacted in maximum 12 inch lifts to at least 95% of maximum dry density as determined by FM 1-T180. Complete this work to the Engineer's satisfaction prior to ACP construction. Should more than 5 feet depth or excessive quantities of unsuitable material be encountered, submit a revised design to the Engineer for review and acceptance prior to proceeding with pile construction.

3. Provide continuous auger flighting from the bottom of the pile to the top of ground at the time of drilling with no gaps or other breaks except for connections. Ensure the auger flights are uniform in diameter throughout its length, and of the diameter specified for the piles less a maximum of 3%. Provide augers with a distance between flights of approximately half the diameter of the auger.

4. Use augers with the grout injection hole located at the bottom of the auger tip below the cutting teeth, and with pile auger leads containing a bottom guide.

5. Construct piles of the length and diameter shown on the Plans.

6. Clearly mark the auger leads to facilitate monitoring of the incremental drilling and grout placement. Provide individual foot marks with 5 foot increments highlighted and clearly visible. Provide a clear reference mark on the moving auger assembly to facilitate accurately monitoring the vertical movement of the auger.

7. Place piles by rotating a continuous flight hollow shaft auger into the ground at a continuous rate that prevents removal of excess soil. Stop advancement after reaching the predetermined depth.

8. Should auger penetration to the required depth prove difficult due to hard materials/refusal, the pile location may be predrilled, upon concurrence by the GFDEOR and acceptance of the Engineer, through the obstruction using appropriate drilling equipment, to a diameter no larger than 1/2 the prescribed finish diameter of the ACP. Commence ACP grouting immediately upon reaching the required tip elevation to minimize ground loss and soil relaxation.

9. Plug the injection hole at the bottom of the auger prior to advancing into the ground.

10. Pump the grout with sufficient pressure as the auger is withdrawn to completely fill the auger hole, preventing hole collapse and to cause the lateral penetration of the grout into soft or porous zones of the surrounding soil or rock. Prior to commencing withdrawal of the auger, establish a head of at least 5 feet of grout by pumping a volume of grout equivalent to 5 feet of pile volume. Do not include the volume or strokes required to prime the grout pumping system in the volume required to build this initial head. Maintain this head of at least 5 feet of grout above the injection point around the perimeter of the auger to displace and remove any loose material from the hole. Maintain positive rotation of the auger at least until placement of the grout.

11. Once the grout head has been established, greatly reduce the speed of rotation of the auger and commence extraction at a rate consistent with the pump discharge. Maintain extraction at a steady rate to prevent a locked-in auger, necking of the pile, or a substantially reduced pile section. Ensure grout starts flowing out from the hole when the cutting head is at least 5 feet below the ground surface. Place a minimum volume of grout in the hole of at least 115% of the column of the auger hole from a depth of 5 feet to the tip. Place a minimum volume of grout in the hole of at least 105% of the column of the auger hole from the ground surface to a depth of 5 feet. Do not include any grout needed to create surplus grout head in the volume of grout placed into the hole. If the grout does not flow out from the hole when the cutting head is

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

at least 5 feet below the ground surface, redrill the pile. If grouting is interrupted for any reason, reinsert the auger by drilling at least 5 feet below the tip of the auger when the interruption occurred, and then regrout.

Use this method of placement at all times. Do not depend on the stability of the hole without the earth filled auger.

12. Assume responsibility for the grout volume placed. If less than 115% of the theoretical volume of grout is placed in any 5 foot increment (100% in the top 5 foot increment), redrill 10 feet below that increment, or to the tip of the pile, whichever is less and resume pumping, followed by controlled removal and grout injection.

13. Furnish and install the reinforcing steel and anchoring bolts as shown in the Contract Documents. For ACP for miscellaneous structures and low clearance post options for noise walls, use wheels or other approved noncorrosive spacing devices within 3 feet of the bottom, within 3 feet of the top, and intervals not exceeding 10 feet along the pile to ensure concentric spacing for the entire length of the cage. Do not use block or wire type spacers. Use a minimum of one spacer per 30 inches of circumference or perimeter of cage with a minimum of three at each level. For noise wall ACP in which the full reinforcement is attached to the post, spacing devices within 3 ft of the top of the pile are not required.

14. Use reinforcement that is without kinks or nonspecified bends, free of mud, oil or other coatings that could adversely affect the bond. Make splices in reinforcement as shown on the Contract Documents, unless otherwise accepted by the Engineer. Place the required steel reinforcement while the grout is still fluid, and immediately after finishing grouting and clearing it from any contaminating material. Install the steel cage into the grout by its own weight or manually. Do not use a mechanical equipment or tool to impact the steel cage or to force it into the grout. If the steel cage cannot be placed completely following this procedure, remove the cage, redrill and regrout the pile.

15. Leave any temporary supports of/for items placed into a grouted pile (reinforcement template, anchor bolt template, precast column supports, etc.) in place for a minimum of 12 hours after completion of the pile. Do not place wall panels or other significant loads, before the grout has set a minimum of seven days or reached the 28-day strength.

#### **455-45 Construction Tolerances.**

Locate piles as shown on the Plans. Locate pile centers to an accuracy of plus or minus 3 inches. Ensure that the top of pile elevation is within plus or minus 3 inches of the Plan elevation. Ensure the tolerances of 534-5.1 can be met.

#### **455-46 Unacceptable Piles.**

Repair or replace unacceptable piles and/or modify the design to compensate for the deficiency at no cost to the Department. Unacceptable piles are defined as piles that fail for any reason, including but not limited to the following: piles placed out of position or to improper elevation; piles with reduced cross section, contaminated grout, lack of grout consolidation (honeycombed), or deficient grout strength; and piles with reinforcement, anchor devices or other components cast or placed into the fluid grout out of position. When the Engineer determines that a pile is unacceptable, the Contractor may propose a foundation redesign to add piles to the foundation, at no expense to the Department. The Contractor's Engineer of Record must perform any redesign, and sign and seal the redesign drawings and calculations. Do not

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

begin any proposed construction until the redesign has been reviewed and approved by the Engineer.

#### **455-47 Auger Cast Pile Installation Plan (ACPIP).**

No later than 15 days before ACP construction begins, submit the ACPIP for acceptance by the Engineer. The ACPIP shall govern all ACP construction activities. In the event that deviations from this installation plan are observed, the Department may perform Independent Verification Testing/Review of the Contractor's equipment, procedures, personnel and ACP construction at any time during ACP construction. If, as determined by the Department, construction equipment, procedures and/or personnel is deemed inadequate to consistently provide auger cast piles meeting the contract requirements, the Contractor's ACPIP acceptance may be withdrawn pending corrective actions. All ACP construction activities shall then cease and not restart until corrective actions have been taken and the ACPIP has been re-accepted.

Provide the following detailed information on the ACPIP:

1. Name and experience record of ACP superintendent or foreman in responsible charge of ACP operations. Place a person in responsible charge of day to day ACP operations meeting the experience requirements of 105-8.13 constructing ACP similar to those described in the Contract Documents. The Engineer will give final acceptance subject to satisfactory performance in the field.
2. List and size of the proposed equipment, including cranes, augers, concrete pumps, mixing equipment etc.
3. Details of grout mixing procedures and proposed pump calibration procedures.
4. Details of pile installation methods.
5. Details of reinforcement placement and method of centering in pile, including details of all temporary supports for reinforcement, anchor bolts, precast columns, etc.
6. Details of how and by whom the grout volumes will be determined, monitored and documented.
7. Required submittals, including shop drawings and cement grout design mixes.
8. Equipment and procedures for visual inspection, and any methods to identify and remediate auger cast pile deficiencies.
9. Name of the inspectors assigned to monitor the installation of the auger cast piles, including evidence of the inspectors having taken and passed the CTQP computer based training course for auger cast piles.
10. Other information requested by the Engineer.
11. A letter from the GFDEOR certifying concurrence with the ACPIP.

The Engineer will evaluate the ACPIP for conformance with the Contract Documents. Within five working days after receipt of the plan, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, the Engineer will notify the Contractor of any comments and additional information required and/or changes that may be necessary to satisfy the Contract Documents. The Engineer will reject any part of the plan that is unacceptable. Submit changes agreed upon for reevaluation. The Engineer will notify the Contractor within two working days, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, after receipt of proposed changes of their acceptance or rejection. All equipment and procedures are subject to trial and satisfactory performance in the field. Acceptance by the Engineer does not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to perform the work in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Engineer's



Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

acceptance is not a guarantee that the chosen methods and equipment are capable of obtaining the required results, this responsibility lies with the Contractor.

#### **455-48 Inspection and Records.**

Monitor and record pile installation utilizing the most recent version of the Department Auger Cast-In-Place Pile Installation Record form.

ARTICLE 455-49 is deleted:

#### **455-50 Basis of Payment.**

Contract Price includes cost of all labor, equipment and materials required for furnishing, installing, and certifying the completed auger cast pile foundations, in place and accepted. No separate payment will be made for any items of work associated with auger cast pile construction.

#### **455-51 Foundation Certification Packages**

Submit two copies of a letter signed and sealed by the GFDEOR to the Engineer certifying each foundation unit has the required axial capacity, lateral stability and integrity, settlements will not affect the functionality of the structure, and that the inspection of the auger cast pile installation was performed under the supervision of the GFDEOR. A separate Foundation Certification Package must be submitted for each foundation unit. The foundation unit is defined as a group of piles per wall segment or per full wall. Every ACP must be certified and the certification accepted before continuing with the construction of any structural element over the foundation unit. Each Foundation Certification Package shall include all ACP logs, the Department spreadsheet properly completed for every ACP and the grout strength test results of the lots sampled. Correct all integrity problems and noncompliance issues prior to submitting the certification packages. The certification shall not be contingent on any future repair or testing, or any approval by the Engineer. Within three working days, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, after receipt of the Foundation Certification Package, the Engineer will examine the records and determine the acceptability of the auger cast piles. The Engineer will reject any certification package that is incomplete or indicates noncompliance with the specifications without the issue being corrected to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

If any ACP is found to be deficient, correct the deficiency (i.e. repair or replace the ACP) and/or modify the design to compensate for the deficiency. In case of disagreement of test results, the Engineer's results will be final and used for determination of acceptance.

After meeting the time requirements of 455-44(15), the Contractor may place panels prior to a complete submittal of the Certification Package at their own risk. If the Engineer determines that verification testing is needed, the Contractor will perform all work and provide all labor, at no additional cost to the Department, necessary to allow access to the piles requiring verification. Replace or redesign and reconstruct, to the satisfaction of the Engineer, any foundation found to be unacceptable after submittal of the certification packages or after verification testing, at no cost to the Department.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

**STRUCTURES FOUNDATIONS (DESIGN BUILD).  
(REV 9-29-22) (FA ) (FY 2023-24)**

SECTION 455 is deleted and the following substituted:

**SECTION 455  
STRUCTURES FOUNDATIONS**

**Index**

**A. General..... 455-1 through 455-2**  
**B. Piling..... 455-3 through 455-12**  
**C. Drilled Shafts ..... 455-13 through 455-24**  
**D. Spread Footings..... 455-25 through 455-37**  
**E. Structures (Other Than Bridge) Foundations-**  
**Auger Cast Piles..... 455-38 through 455-50**

**A. GENERAL**

**455-1 General Requirement.**

The Contractor may examine available soil samples and/or rock cores obtained during the preliminary soil boring operations at the appropriate District Materials Office or designated storage location.

**455-1.1 Monitor Existing Structures:** Monitor existing structures in accordance with Section 108.

**455-1.2 Excavation:** Complete all excavation of the foundations prior to installing piles or shafts unless otherwise authorized by the Engineer. After completing pile/shaft installation, remove all loose and displaced materials from around the piles/shafts, leaving a clean, solid surface. Compact the soil surface on which concrete is to be placed or which will support the forming system for the concrete to support the load of the plastic concrete without settling or causing the concrete to crack, or as shown in the Contract Documents.

**455-1.2.1 Abutment (End Bent) Fill:** Place and compact the fill before installing end-bent piling/shafts, except when driving specified test piling in end bents or when the Plans show uncased piles through proprietary retaining wall fills.

When installing piles/shafts or casing prior to placing fill, take necessary precautions to prevent displacement of piles/shafts during placing and compacting fill materials within 15 feet of the piles/shafts or casing. Reference and check the position of the piles/shafts or casing at three approximately equal intervals during construction of the embankment.

Place embankment material in 6 inch compacted lifts in the 15 foot area around the piles/shafts or casing. Compact embankment material within the 15 foot area adjacent to the piles/shafts or casing to the required density with compaction equipment weighing less than 1,000 pounds. When installing piles/shafts prior to the completion of the surrounding fills, do not cap them until placing the fills as near to final grade as possible, leaving only the necessary working room for construction of the caps.

When shown in the Plans, provide permanent casings installed prior to placement of the fill, for all drilled shafts through mechanically stabilized fills (for example,

*Improve Safety, Enhance Mobility, Inspire Innovation*

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

behind proprietary retaining walls) for shafts installed after fill placement. Install temporary casings through the completed conventional fill when permanent casings are not required.

Provide permanent casings, if required, before the fill is placed extending a sufficient distance into the existing ground to provide stability to the casings during construction of the abutment fill.

**455-1.3 Cofferdams:** Construct cofferdams as detailed in the Plans. When cofferdams are not detailed in the Plans, employ a qualified Specialty Engineer to design cofferdams, and to sign and seal the plans and specification requirements. Send the designs to the Engineer for his records before beginning construction.

Provide a qualified diver and a safety diver to inspect the conditions of the foundation enclosure or cofferdam when the Contract Documents require a seal for construction. Equip these divers with suitable voice communications, and have them inspect the foundation enclosure and cofferdam periphery including each sheeting indentation and around each piling or drilled shaft to ensure that no layers of mud or other undesirable materials were left above the bottom of seal elevation during the excavation process. Also have the divers check to make sure the surfaces of the piles or drilled shafts are sufficiently clean to allow bond of the concrete down to the minimum bottom of seal elevation. Ensure that there are no mounds of stone, shell, or unapproved backfill material left after placement and grading. Ensure that the seal is placed as specified and evaluate the adequacy of the foundation soils or rock. Correct any deficiencies found by the divers. Upon completion of inspection by the divers, the Department may also elect to inspect the work before authorizing the Contractor to proceed with subsequent construction operations. Submit a written report by the divers to the Engineer indicating the results of their underwater inspection before requesting authorization to place the seal concrete.

**455-1.4 Vibrations on Freshly Placed Concrete (Drilled Shafts and Piers):** Ensure that freshly placed concrete is not subjected to peak particle velocities greater than 1.5 inches per second from vibration sources located within 30 feet (from the nearest outside edge of freshly placed concrete to the vibration source) until that concrete has attained its final set as defined by ASTM C403 except as required to remove temporary casings before the drilled shaft elapsed time has expired.

## **455-2 Static Compression Load Tests.**

**455-2.1 General:** Employ a professional testing laboratory, or Specialty Engineer with prior load test experience on at least three projects, to conduct the load test in compliance with these Specifications, to record all data, and to submit signed and sealed reports of the test results to the Engineer.

Perform the load test by applying a load up to the load required in the Contract Documents or to the failure load, whichever occurs first.

Do not apply test loads to piles sooner than 48 hours (or the time interval shown in the Plans) after driving of the test pile or reaction piles, whichever occurs last.

Do not begin static load testing of drilled shafts until the concrete has attained a compressive strength of 3,400 psi. The Contractor may use high early strength concrete to obtain this strength at an earlier time to prevent testing delays.

Provide all equipment, materials, labor, and personnel required to conduct the load tests, including determination of anchor reaction member depths. In this case, provide a loading apparatus designed to accommodate the maximum load plus an adequate safety factor.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

While performing the load test, provide safety equipment, and employ safety procedures consistent with the latest approved practices for this work. Include with these safety procedures, adequate support for the load test plates and jack to prevent them from falling in the event of a release of load due to hydraulic failure, test pile/shaft failure, or any other cause.

**455-2.2 Loading Apparatus:** Provide an apparatus for applying the vertical loads as described in one of the following:

1. As shown and described in the Contract Documents.
2. As supplied by the Contractor, one of the following devices designed to accommodate a load at least 20% higher than the test load shown in the Plans or described herein for test loads:

- a. **Load Applied by Hydraulic Jack Acting Against Weighted Box or Platform:** Construct a test box or test platform, resting on a suitable support, over the pile, and load it with material with a total weight greater than the anticipated maximum test load. Locate supports for the weighted box or platform at least 6 feet or three pile/shaft diameters, whichever is greater, measured from the edge of the pile or shaft to the edge of the supports. Insert a hydraulic jack with pressure gauge between the test pile or shaft and the underside of the reaction beam, and apply the load to the pile or shaft by operating the jack between the reaction beam and the top of the pile or shaft.

- b. **Load Applied to the Test Pile or Shaft by Hydraulic Jack Acting Against Anchored Reaction Member:** Construct reaction member anchorages in accordance with article 6.3 of ASTM D1143. Attach a girder(s) of sufficient strength to act as a reaction beam to the upper ends of the anchor piles or shafts. Insert a hydraulic jack with pressure gauges between the head of the test pile/shaft and the underside of the reaction beam, and apply the test load to the pile/shaft by operating the jack between the reaction beam and the pile/shaft head.

If using drilled shafts with bells as reaction member anchorages, locate the top of the bell of any reaction shaft anchorage at least three shaft diameters below the bottom of the test shaft.

- c. **Combination Devices:** The Contractor may use a combination of devices (a) and (b), as described above, to apply the test load to the pile or shaft.

- d. **Other systems proposed by the Contractor and accepted by the Engineer:** When necessary, provide horizontal supports for loading the pile/shaft, and space them so that the ratio of the unsupported length to the minimum radius of gyration of the pile does not exceed 120 for steel piles, and the unsupported length to the least cross-section dimension does not exceed 20 for concrete piles or drilled shafts. Ensure that horizontal supports provide full support without restraining the vertical movement of the pile/shaft in any way.

When required by the Contract Documents, apply a horizontal load to the pile/shaft either separately or in conjunction with the vertical load. Apply the load to the test pile/shaft by hydraulic jacks, jacking against Contractor provided reaction devices. After receiving the Engineer's acceptance of the proposed method of load application, apply the horizontal load in increments, and relieve it in decrements as required by the Contract Documents.

**455-2.2.1 Modified Quick Test:**

1. **Loading Procedure:** Apply vertical loads concentric with the longitudinal axis of the tested pile/shaft to accurately determine and control the load acting on the pile/shaft at any time. Place the load on the pile/shaft continuously, in increments equal to approximately 5% of the maximum test load specified until approaching the failure load, as indicated by the measuring

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

apparatus and/or instruments. Then, apply increments of approximately 2.5% until the pile/shaft “plunges” or attains the limiting load. The Specialty Engineer may elect to stop the loading increments when the pile/shaft has met the failure criteria or when a settlement equal to 10% of the pile/shaft width or diameter is reached. Apply each load increment immediately after taking and verifying the complete set of readings from all gauges and instruments. Apply each increment of load within the minimum length of time practical, and immediately take the readings. Complete the addition of a load increment and the completion of the readings within 5 to 15 minutes. Hold the maximum applied load for one hour.

Remove the load in decrements of about 10% of the maximum test load. Remove each decrement of load within the minimum length of time practical, and immediately take the readings. Complete the removal of a load decrement and the taking of the readings within 5 to 15 minutes. The Engineer may also require up to two reloading cycles with five loading increments and three unloading decrements. Record the final recovery of the pile/shaft until movement is essentially complete for a period of one hour after the last unload interval.

2. Failure Criteria and Nominal Resistance: Use the criteria described herein to establish the failure load. The failure load is defined as the load that causes a pile/shaft top deflection equal to the calculated elastic compression plus 0.15 inches plus 1/120 of the pile/shaft minimum width or the diameter in inches for piles/shafts 24 inches or less in width, and equal to the calculated elastic compression plus 1/30 of the pile/shaft minimum width or diameter for piles/shafts greater than 24 inches in width. Consider the nominal resistance of any pile/shaft so tested as either the maximum applied load or the failure load, whichever is smaller.

**455-2.3 Measuring Apparatus:** Provide an apparatus for measuring movement of the test piles/shafts that consists of all of the following devices:

1. Wire Line and Scale: Stretch a wire between two secure supports located at a distance at least:
  - a. 10 feet from the center of the test pile but not less than 3.5 times the pile diameter or width.
  - b. 12 feet from the centerline of the shaft to be tested but not less than three shaft diameters.

Locate the wire supports as far as practical from reaction beam anchorages. At over-water test sites, the Contractor may attach the wire line to the sides of the service platform. Mount the wire with a pulley on one support and a weight at the end of the wire to provide constant tension on the wire. Ensure that the wire passes across the face of a scale mounted on a mirror attached to the test pile/shaft so that readings can be made directly from the scale. Use the scale readings as a check on an average of the dial readings. When measuring both horizontal and vertical movement, mount separate wires to indicate each movement, horizontal or vertical. Measure horizontal movements from two reference wires set normal to each other in a horizontal.

2. Wooden Reference Beams and Dial Gauges: Attach wooden reference beams as detailed in the Plans and accepted by the Engineer to independent supports. For piles, install the independent supports at the greater of 3.5 times the pile diameter or width or 10 feet from the centerline of the test pile. For drilled shafts, install independent supports at the greater of three shaft diameters or 12 feet from the centerline of the shaft to be tested. Locate the reference beam supports as far as practical from reaction beam anchorages. For over-water test sites, the Contractor may attach the reference beams between two diagonal platform supports. Attach dial gauges, with their stems resting either on the top of the pile/shaft or on lugs or similar reference

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

points on the pile/shaft, to the fixed beams to record the movement of the pile/shaft head. Ensure that the area on the pile/shaft or lug on which the stem bears is a smooth surface which will not cause irregularities in the dial readings.

Provide a minimum of four dial gauges, each with 0.001 inch divisions and with 2 inch minimum travel, placed at 90 degree intervals for measuring vertical or horizontal movement.

3. Survey Level: As a check on the dial gauges, determine the elevation of a point near the top of the test pile/shaft (on plan datum) by survey level at each load and unload interval during the load test. Unless accepted otherwise by the Engineer, level survey precision is 0.001 foot. Alternately, the surveyor may read an engineer's 50 scale attached near the pile/shaft head. Determine the first elevation before applying the first load increment; make intermediate readings immediately before a load increment or an unload decrement, and after the final unload decrement that completely removes the load. Make a final reading at the time of the last recovery reading.

For over-water test sites, when shown in the Plans or directed by the Engineer, the Contractor shall, drive an H pile through a 36 inch casing to provide a stable support for the level and to protect it against wave action interfering with level measurements. Provide a suitable movable jig for the surveyor to stand. Use a jig that has a minimum of three legs, has a work platform providing at least 4 feet width of work area around the casing, and is accepted by the Engineer before use. The described work platform may be supported by the protective casing when accepted by the Engineer.

#### **455-2.4 Load Test Instrumentation:**

1. General: The intent of the load test instrumentation is to measure the test load on top of the pile/shaft and its distribution between side friction and end bearing to provide evaluation of the preliminary design calculations and settlement estimates and to provide information for final pile/shaft length design. Ensure that the instrumentation is as described in the Contract Documents.

Supply 110 V, 60 Hz, 30 A of AC electric power in accordance with the National Electric Code (NEC) to each test pile/shaft site during the installation of the instrumentation, during the load testing, and during any instrumented set-checks/redrives.

Place all of the internal instrumentation on the rebar cage before installation in the test shaft. Construct the rebar cage at least two days before it is required for construction of the test shaft. Successfully demonstrate the lifting and handling procedures before installing the instrumentation. Place the instrumented rebar cage in one segment without causing damage to the instrumentation.

2. Hydraulic Jack and Load Cell: Provide hydraulic jack(s) of adequate size to deliver the required test load to the pile/shaft unless shown otherwise in the Plans. Before load testing begins, submit a certificate from a reputable testing laboratory showing a calibration of gauge readings for all stages of jack loading and unloading for jacks provided. Ensure that the jack has been calibrated within the preceding six months. Ensure that the accuracy of the gauge is within 5% of the true load.

Provide an adequate load cell accepted by the Engineer that has been calibrated within the preceding six months. Provide an approved electrical readout device for the load cell. Submit a certificate from an independent laboratory showing a calibration of readings for all stages of loading and unloading for load cells furnished by the Contractor and obtain the

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

approval of the Engineer before beginning load testing. Ensure that the accuracy of the load cell is within 1% of the true load.

3. Telltales: When shown in the Contract Documents, install telltales that consist of an unstressed steel rod, greased for reducing friction and corrosion, with appropriate clearance inside a constant-diameter pipe that rests on a flat plate attached to the end of the pipe at the point of interest shown in the Plans. Construct telltales in accordance with the Contract Documents. Install dial gauges reading to 0.001 inch with 1 inch minimum travel as directed by the Specialty Engineer to measure the movement of the telltale with respect to the top of the pile/shaft.

4. Embedded Strain Gauges: Install strain gauges in the test shaft to measure the distribution of the load. Ensure that the type, number, and location of the strain gauges are as shown in the Plans or as directed by the Geotechnical Foundation Design Engineer of Record (GFDEOR). Use strain gauges that are waterproof and have suitable shielded cable that is unspliced within the shaft. In drilled shafts provide sufficient instrumentation to determine side friction components in segments no longer than 5 feet and the end bearing component.

5. Caliper: Provide a caliper tool or system to measure accurately and continuously the shape of test shafts prior to placing concrete.

**455-2.5 Support Facilities:** Furnish adequate facilities for making load and settlement readings 24 hours per day. Provide such facilities for the instrumented area, and include lighting and shelter from rain, wind, and direct sunlight.

**455-2.6 Load Test Personnel Furnished by the Contractor:** Provide a certified welder, together with necessary cutting and welding equipment, to assist with the load test setup and to make any necessary adjustments during the load test. Provide personnel to operate the jack, generators, and lighting equipment, and also provide one person with transportation to assist as required during load test setup and conducting of the load tests. Provide qualified personnel, to read the dial gauges, take level measurements, and conduct the load test under the direct supervision of the Specialty Engineer.

**455-2.7 Cooperation by the Contractor:** Cooperate with the Department, and ensure that the Department has access to all facilities necessary for observation of the conduct and the results of the test.

**455-2.8 Required Reports:** Submit a static load test report signed and sealed by the Specialty Engineer to the Engineer for review and acceptance, at least three working days, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, prior to beginning production pile/shaft construction. Include in the report of the load test the following information:

1. A tabulation of the time of, and the amount of, the load and settlement readings, and the load and recovery readings taken during the loading and unloading of the pile/shaft.
2. A graphic representation of the test results, during loading and unloading of pile/shaft top movement as measured by the average of the dial gauge readings, from wireline readings and from level readings.
3. A graphic representation of the test results, when using telltales, showing pile/shaft compression and pile/shaft tip movement.
4. The estimated failure and safe loads according to the criteria described herein.
5. The derived side friction component for each pile/shaft segment, and end bearing component. Include all pertinent test data, analysis and charts used to determine these values.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

6. Remarks concerning any unusual occurrences during the loading of the pile/shaft.
7. The names of those making the required observations of the results of the load test, the weather conditions prevailing during the load test, and the effect of weather conditions on the load test.
8. All supporting data including jack and load cell calibrations and certificates and other equipment requiring calibration.
9. All data taken during the load test together with instrument calibration certifications. In addition, submit a report showing an analysis of the results of axial load and lateral load tests in which soil resistance along and against the pile/shaft is reported as a function of deflection.
10. For drilled shafts, include all cross-hole sonic logging results, gamma-gamma density logging results, the results of other integrity tests, caliper measurements data and the pilot holes reports of core borings. Attach this report to the final authorized tip elevations letter in accordance with 455-15.6.
11. For piles, include pile driving records, and dynamic testing data and analysis.
12. Submit a signed & sealed letter to the Department confirming the design assumptions were verified by the load tests before proceeding with production foundation construction.

**455-2.9 Disposition of Loading Material:** Remove all equipment and materials, which remains the Contractor's property, from the site. Clean up and restore the site to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

**455-2.10 Disposition of Tested Piles/Shafts:** After completing testing, cut off the tested piles/shafts, which are not to be incorporated into the final structure, and any reaction piles/shafts at an elevation 24 inches below the finished graded surface. Take ownership of the cut-offs and provide areas for their disposal.

## B. PILING

### **455-3 General.**

Furnish and install concrete, steel, or wood piling including driving, jetting, preformed pile holes, cutting off, splicing, dynamic load testing, and static load testing of piling. Prior to driving, clearly mark the piles to facilitate inspection. Provide individual straight-line marks at 1-ft intervals numbered at least every 5 ft. Use markers or lumber crayons or paint marks that can be easily observed by the inspector. Ensure marks are spaced uniformly and perpendicular to the face of the pile. Face pile so that the pile markings are easily visible to the pile inspector. Provide inch marks as needed when set checks or practical refusal checks are required.

In the event a pile is broken or otherwise damaged by the Contractor to the extent that the damage is irreparable, in the opinion of the Engineer, the Contractor shall extract and replace the pile at no additional expense to the Department. In the event that a pile is mislocated by the Contractor, the Contractor shall extract and replace the pile, at no expense to the Department, except when a design change proposed by the Contractor is approved by the Department as provided in 455-5.16.5.



Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

**455-4 Classification.**

The Department classifies piling as follows:

1. Treated timber piling.
2. Prestressed concrete piling.
3. Steel piling.
4. Test piling.
5. Sheet piling.
  - a. Concrete sheet piling.
  - b. Steel sheet piling.
6. Polymeric Piles (see Section 471 for requirements).

**455-5 General Construction Requirements.**

**455-5.1 Predrilling of Pile Holes:** Predrilled pile holes are either starter holes to the depth described in this Subarticle or holes drilled through embankment/fill material down to the natural ground at no additional cost to the Department. When using low displacement steel piling such as structural shapes, drive them through the compacted fill without the necessity of drilling holes through the fill except when the requirements for predrilling are shown in the Plans. When using concrete or other high displacement piles, drill pile holes through fill, new or existing, to at least the elevation of the natural ground. Use the range of drill diameters listed below for square concrete piles.

12 inch square piles .....	15 to 17 inches
14 inch square piles .....	18 to 20 inches
18 inch square piles .....	22 to 26 inches
20 inch square piles .....	24 to 29 inches
24 inch square piles .....	30 to 34 inches
30 inch square piles .....	36 to 43 inches

For other pile sizes, use the diameter of the drills shown in the Plans or accepted by the Engineer. Accurately drill the pile holes with the hole centered over the Plan location of the piling. Maintain the location and vertical alignment within the tolerances allowed for the piling.

For predrilled holes required through rock or other hard (i.e. debris, obstructions, etc.) materials that may damage the pile during installation, predrill hole diameters approximately 2 inches larger than the largest dimension across the pile cross-section. Fill the annular space around the piles as described in 455-5.10.1 with clean A-3 sand or sand meeting the requirements of 902-3.3.

In the setting of permanent and test piling, the Contractor may initially predrill holes to a depth up to 20% of the test pile length, unless required otherwise by the Engineer or the plans. Predrill holes for production piles in the same manner as the test piles. When installing piles in compacted fill, predrill the holes to the elevation of the natural ground. With prior written authorization from the Engineer, the Contractor may predrill holes to greater depths to minimize the effects of vibrations on existing structures adjacent to the work or for other reasons the Contractor proposes.

**455-5.2 Underwater Driving:** Underwater driving is defined as any driving through water which is above the pile head at the time of driving.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

When conducting underwater driving, provide a diver equipped with voice communications to aid in placing the hammer back on the pile for required cushion changes or for subsequent re-driving, to attach or recover instrumentation, to inspect the condition of the pile, or for other assistance as required.

Select one of the following methods for underwater driving:

1. Accomplish underwater driving using conventional driving equipment and piling longer than authorized so that the piling will extend above the water surface during final driving. When choosing this option, furnish a pile hammer that satisfies the requirements of this Section for use with the longer pile.

2. Accomplish underwater driving using an underwater hammer that meets the requirements of this Section and is accepted by the Engineer. When choosing this option, provide at least one pile longer than authorized at each pile group, extending above the water surface at final driving. At each group location, drive the longer pile first. Evaluate the adequacy of the underwater driving system. Use the pile tip elevation of the longer pile to evaluate the acceptability of the piles driven with the underwater hammer.

3. Accomplish underwater driving using conventional driving equipment with a suitable pile follower. When choosing this option, provide at least one pile longer than required at each pile group, extending above the water surface at final driving. At each group location, drive the full length pile first without using the follower. Perform a dynamic load test on the first pile driven with the follower in each group. Use the pile tip elevation of the longer pile to evaluate the acceptability of the piles driven with the follower.

Prior to use, submit details of the follower to the Engineer along with the information required in 455-10. Include the weight, cross-section details, stiffness, type of materials, and dimensions of the follower.

**455-5.3 Pile Hammers:** All equipment is subject to satisfactory field performance during and without dynamic testing. Use a variable energy hammer to drive concrete piles. Hammers will be rated based on the theoretical energy of the ram at impact. Supply driving equipment which provides the required normal bearing resistance at a blow count ranging from 3 blows per inch (36 blows per foot) to 10 blows per inch (120 blows per foot) at the end of initial drive, and capable of driving the piles to a resistance equal to at least 1.25 times the nominal bearing resistance, without overstressing the piling in compression or tension and without reaching practical refusal, as defined in 455-5.11.3. When requested, submit to the Engineer all technical specifications and operating instructions related to hammer equipment.

**455-5.3.1 Air/steam:** Variable energy air/steam hammers shall be capable of providing at least two ram stroke lengths. The short ram stroke length shall be approximately half of the full stroke for hammers with strokes up to 4 feet and no more than 2 feet for hammers with maximum strokes lengths over 4 feet. Operate and maintain air/steam hammers within the manufacturer's specified ranges. Use a plant and equipment for steam and air hammers with sufficient capacity to maintain, under working conditions, the hammer, volume and pressure specified by the manufacturer. Equip the plant and equipment with accurate pressure gauges which are easily accessible. Drive piles with air/steam hammers operating within 10% of the manufacturer's rated speed in blows per minute. Provide and maintain in working order for the Engineer's use an approved device to automatically determine and display the blows per minute of the hammer.

**455-5.3.2 Diesel:** Variable energy diesel hammers shall have at least three fuel settings that will produce reduced strokes. Operate and maintain diesel hammers within the

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

manufacturer's specified ranges. Determine the rated energy of diesel hammers using measured ram stroke length multiplied by the weight of the ram for open end hammers and by methods recommended by the manufacturer for closed end hammers.

Provide and maintain in working order an approved device to automatically determine and display ram stroke for open-end diesel hammers.

Equip closed-end (double acting) diesel hammers with a bounce chamber pressure gauge, in good working order, mounted near ground level so it can be easily read. Also, submit to the Engineer a chart, calibrated to actual hammer performance within 30 days prior to initial use, equating bounce chamber pressure to either equivalent energy or stroke for the closed-end diesel hammer to be used.

**455-5.3.3 Hydraulic:** Variable energy hydraulic hammers shall have at least three hydraulic control settings that provide for predictable energy or equivalent ram stroke. The shortest stroke shall be a maximum of 2 feet for the driving of concrete piles. The remaining strokes shall include full stroke and approximately halfway between minimum and maximum stroke.

Supply hammer instrumentation with electronic read out, and control unit that allows the inspector and Engineer to monitor, and the operator to read and adjust the hammer energy or equivalent ram stroke. When pressure measuring equipment is required to determine hammer energy, calibrate the pressure measuring equipment before use.

**455-5.3.4 Vibratory:** Vibratory hammers of sufficient capacity (force and amplitude) may be used to drive steel sheet piles and, with acceptance of the Engineer, to drive steel bearing piles a sufficient distance to get the impact hammer on the pile (to stick the pile). The Geotechnical Foundation Design Engineer of Record will determine the allowable depth of driving using the vibratory hammer based on site conditions. However, in all cases, use a power impact hammer for the last 15 feet or more of the final driving of steel bearing piles for bearing determinations after all piles in the bent/pier have been driven with a vibratory hammer. Do not use vibratory hammers to install concrete piles, or to install support or reaction piles for a load test.

#### **455-5.4 Cushions and Pile Helmet:**

**455-5.4.1 Capblock:** Provide a capblock (also called the hammer cushion) as recommended by the hammer manufacturer. Use commercially manufactured capblocks constructed of durable manmade materials with uniform known properties. Do not use wood chips, wood blocks, rope, or other material which permit excessive loss of hammer energy. Do not use capblocks constructed of asbestos materials. Obtain the Engineer's acceptance for all proposed capblock materials and proposed thickness for use. Maintain capblocks in good condition, and replace them when charred, melted, or otherwise significantly deteriorated. Inspect the capblock before driving begins and weekly or at appropriate intervals based on field trial. Replace or repair any capblock which loses more than 25% of its original thickness, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, before permitting further driving.

**455-5.4.2 Pile Cushion:** Provide a pile cushion that is adequate to protect the pile from being overstressed in compression and tension during driving. Use a pile cushion sized so that it will fully fill the lateral dimensions of the pile helmet minus one inch but does not cover any void or hole extending through the top of the pile. Determine the thickness based upon the hammer-pile-soil system. For driving concrete piles, use a pile cushion made from pine plywood or oak lumber. Do not use materials previously soaked, saturated or treated with oil. Maintain pile cushions in good condition and replace them when charred, splintered, excessively

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

compressed, or otherwise deteriorated to the point it will not protect the pile against overstressing in tension or compression. Protect cushions from the weather, and keep them dry. Do not soak the cushions in any liquid. Provide a new cushion for each pile unless approved otherwise by the Engineer after satisfactory field trial during dynamic testing.

During dynamic load tests, replace the pile cushion when any of the pile stress measurements exceed the maximum allowed pile stress determined by 455-5.12.2. When driving a pile without dynamic testing, replace the pile cushion when the cushion is either compressed more than one-half the original thickness, begins to burn, or as directed by the Engineer after field performance.

Reuse pile cushions in good condition to perform all set-checks and redrives. Use the same cushion to perform the set-check or redrive as was used during the initial driving, unless this cushion is unacceptable due to deterioration, in which case use a similar cushion.

**455-5.4.3 Pile Helmet:** Provide a pile helmet suitable for the type and size of piling being driven. Use a pile helmet deep enough to adequately contain the required thickness of pile cushion and to assist in maintaining pile-hammer alignment. Use a pile helmet that fits loosely over the pile head and is at least 1 inch larger than the pile dimensions. Use a pile helmet designed so that it will not restrain the pile from rotating.

**455-5.5 Leads:** Provide pile leads constructed in a manner which offers freedom of movement to the hammer and that have the strength and rigidity to hold the hammer and pile in the correct position and alignment during driving. When using followers, use leads that are long enough and suitable to maintain position and alignment of the hammer, follower, and pile throughout driving.

**455-5.6 Followers:** When driving using followers, perform dynamic load testing as per 455-5.14. Obtain the Engineer's acceptance for the type of follower, when used, and the method of connection to the leads and pile. Use followers constructed of steel with an adequate cross-section to withstand driving stresses. When driving concrete piles, ensure that the cross-sectional area of the follower is at least 18% of the cross-sectional area of the pile. When driving steel piles, ensure that the cross-sectional area of the follower is greater than or equal to the cross-sectional area of the pile. Provide a pile helmet at the lower end of the follower sized according to the requirements of 455-5.4.3. Use followers constructed that maintain the alignment of the pile, follower, and hammer and still allow the pile to be driven within the allowable tolerances. Use followers designed with guides adapted to the leads that maintain the hammer, follower, and the piles in alignment.

Use information from dynamic load tests described in 455-5.14 to evaluate the adequacy of the follower and to determine pile capacity.

**455-5.7 Templates and Ground Elevations:** Provide a fixed template, adequate to maintain the pile in proper position and alignment during driving with swinging leads or with semi-fixed leads. The Engineer may allow the use of templates attached to a barge if the Contractor demonstrates satisfactorily that the pile alignment, and the elevation and horizontal position of the template can be maintained during all pile driving operations. Where practical, place the template so that the pile can be driven to cut-off elevation before removing the template. Ensure that templates do not restrict the vertical movement of the pile.

Supply a stable reference close to the pile, which is satisfactory in the opinion of the Engineer, for determination of the pile penetration. At the time of driving piles, obtain and

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

record elevations of the original ground and template at each pile or pile group location. Note the highest and lowest elevation at each required location and the ground elevation at all piles.

**455-5.8 Water Jets:** Use jet pumps, supply lines, and jet pipes that provide adequate pressure and volume of water to freely erode the soil. Do not perform jetting without prior approval by the Engineer.

Do not perform jetting in the embankment or for end bents. Where conditions warrant, with approval by the GFDEOR, perform jetting on the holes first, place the pile therein, then drive the pile to secure the last few feet of penetration. Only use one jet for prejetting or jetting through piles constructed with a center jet-hole. Use two jets when using external jets. When jetting and driving, position the jets slightly behind the advancing pile tip (approximately 3 feet or as approved by the GFDEOR). When using water jets in the driving, determine the pile bearing only from the results of driving after withdrawing the jets, except where using jets to continuously eliminate soil resistance through the scour zone, ensure that they remain in place as directed by the GFDEOR and operating during pile bearing determination. Where practical, perform jetting on all piles in a pile group before driving begins. When large pile groups or pile spacing and batter make this impractical, or when the Plans specify a jet-drive sequence, set check a sufficient number of previously driven piles in a pile group to confirm their capacity after completing all jetting.

**455-5.9 Penetration Requirements:** Measure the penetration of piles from the elevation of the natural ground, the existing surface, the deepest scour elevation shown in the Pile Data Table, or the bottom of excavation, whichever is lowest. When the Contract Documents show a minimum pile tip elevation, drive the tip of the pile to this minimum elevation. The Engineer will accept the bearing of a pile only if the Contractor achieves the required bearing when the tip of the pile is at or below the specified minimum tip elevation and below the bottom of the preformed or predrilled pile hole.

When the Plans do not show a minimum tip elevation, ensure that the penetration is at least 10 feet into firm bearing material or at least 20 feet into soft material unless otherwise permitted by the Engineer. The Engineer may accept a penetration between 15 feet and 20 feet when there is an accumulation of five consecutive feet or more of firm bearing material. Firm bearing material is any material offering a driving resistance greater than or equal to 30 tons per square foot of gross pile area as determined by the Dynamic Load Testing (455-5.12.4). Soft material is any material offering less than these resistances. The gross pile area is the actual pile tip cross-sectional area for solid concrete piles, the product of the width and depth for H piles, and the area within the outside perimeter for pipe piles and voided concrete piles.

Do not drive piles beyond practical refusal. To meet the requirements in this Subarticle, provide penetration aids, such as jetting or preformed pile holes, when piles cannot be driven to the required penetration without reaching practical refusal.

**455-5.10 Preformed Pile Holes:**

**455-5.10.1 Description:** Preformed pile holes serve as a penetration aid when all other pile installation methods fail to produce the desired penetration and when authorized by the GFDEOR to minimize the effects of vibrations on adjacent structures. Preformed pile holes are necessary when the presence of rock or strong strata of soils will not permit the installation of piles to the desired penetration by driving or a combination of jetting and driving, when determined necessary, and authorized by the GFDEOR to minimize the effects of vibrations on adjacent existing structures. Drive all piles installed in preformed pile holes to determine that the bearing requirements have been met.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

For preformed holes which are required through material that caves during driving to the extent that the preformed hole does not serve its intended purpose, case the hole from the surface through caving material. After installing the pile to the bottom of the casing, remove the casings unless shown otherwise in the Plans. Determine bearing of the pile after removing the casing unless shown otherwise in the Plans. Fill all voids between the pile and soil remaining after driving through preformed holes with clean A-3 sand or sand meeting the requirements of 902-3.3, after the pile has achieved the required minimum tip elevation, unless grouting of preformed pile holes is shown in the Plans. If pile driving is interrupted during sand placement, drive the pile at least 20 additional blows after filling all of the voids between the pile and soil with sand at no additional cost to the Department.

**455-5.10.2 Provisions for Use of Preformed Pile Holes:** Preformed pile holes may be used when the Contractor establishes that the required results cannot be obtained when driving the load bearing piles with specified driving equipment, or if jetting is allowed, while jetting the piles and then driving or while jetting the piles during driving.

**455-5.10.3 Reasons for Preformed Pile Holes:** The Department considers, but does not limit to, the following conditions as reasons for preformed pile holes:

1. Inability to drive piles to the required penetration with driving and jetting equipment.
2. To penetrate a hard layer or layers of rock or strong stratum that the Engineer considers not sufficiently thick to support the structure.
3. To obtain greater penetration into dense (strong) material and into dense material containing holes, cavities or unstable soft layers.
4. To obtain penetration into a stratum in which it is desired to found the structure.
5. To minimize the effects of vibrations or heave on adjacent existing structures.
6. To minimize the effects of ground heave on adjacent piles.

**455-5.10.4 Construction Methods:** Construct preformed pile holes by drilling or driving and withdrawing a suitable punch or chisel at the locations of the piles. Construct a hole that is equal to or slightly greater than the largest pile dimension for the entire length of the hole and of sufficient depth to obtain the required penetration. Carefully form the preformed hole by using a drill or punch guided by a template or other suitable device, and do not exceed the minimum dimensions necessary to achieve the required penetration of the pile. When the Plans call for grouting the preformed pile holes, provide a minimum pile hole dimension that is 2 inches larger than the largest pile dimension. Construct the holes at the Plan position of the pile and the tolerances in location, and ensure the hole is straight and that the batter is the same as specified for the pile. Loose material may remain in the preformed pile hole if the conditions in 455-5.10.1 are satisfied.

**455-5.10.5 Grouting of Pile Holes:** Clean and grout preformed pile holes for bearing piles, when the Plans require grouting after driving. Use grout that meets the requirements of 455-40 and 455-42 and has a minimum compressive strength of 3,000 psi at 28 days or as specified in the Plans. Prepare cylinders and perform QC testing in accordance with 455-43. LOT size and verification will be in accordance with 455-43. Pump the grout through three or more grout pipes initially placed at the bottom of the preformed hole. The Contractor may raise the grout pipes when necessary to prevent clogging and to complete the grouting operations. Maintain the grout pipes below the surface of the previously placed grout.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

Continue grouting until the grout reaches the ground surface all around the pile. Provide divers to monitor grouting operations when the water depth is such that it is impractical to monitor from the ground surface.

#### **455-5.11 Bearing Requirements:**

**455-5.11.1 General:** Drive piles to provide the bearing required for carrying the loads shown in the Plans. For all types of bearing piles, consider the driving resistance as determined by the methods described herein sufficient for carrying the specified loads as the minimum bearing which is accepted for any type of piles. Determine pile bearing using the method described herein or as shown in the Plans.

For foundations requiring 100% dynamic testing of production piles, ensure each pile has achieved minimum penetration and the minimum required bearing for 6 inches of consecutive driving, or the minimum penetration is achieved, driving has reached practical refusal in firm material and the bearing capacity obtained in all the refusal blows.

For foundations not requiring 100% dynamic testing of production piles, ensure each pile has achieved minimum penetration, the blow count is generally the same or increasing and the minimum required bearing capacity obtained for 24 inches of consecutive driving with less than 1/4 inches rebound per blow, or the minimum penetration is achieved, and driving has reached practical refusal in firm material.

**455-5.11.2 Bearing Criteria:** For foundations requiring 100% dynamic testing, determine the bearing of all piles using the data received from dynamic load testing equipment utilizing internally or externally mounted sensors according to the methods described in 455-5.12.1.

For foundations not requiring 100% dynamic testing, drive all piles to the blow count criteria established by the GFDEOR and the Dynamic Testing Engineer (DTE) using the methods described herein and presented in the production pile length and driving criteria letter (see 455-5.15.2).

**455-5.11.3 Practical Refusal:** Practical refusal is defined as 20 blows per inch or less than one inch penetration, with the hammer operating at the highest setting or setting determined by the DTE for driving piles without damage and less than 1/4 inches rebound per blow. Stop driving as soon as the pile has reached practical refusal.

#### **455-5.11.4 Set-checks and Pile Redrive:**

1. Set-checks: Set-checks consist of re-driving the pile after certain period of time, typically up to 24 hours. Perform set-checks as required and at the waiting periods shown in the Contract Documents. Provide an engineer's level or other suitable equipment for elevation determinations to determine accurate pile penetration during the set-checks. A pile may be accepted when a set-check shows that it has achieved the minimum required pile bearing and has met all other requirements of this Section.

2. Pile Redrive: Pile redrive consists of re-driving the pile after the following working day from initial driving to determine time effects, to reestablish pile capacity due to pile heave, or for other reasons.

3. Uninstrumented Set-Checks and Uninstrumented Pile Redrive: Piles may be accepted based on uninstrumented set-checks or uninstrumented pile redrives only when the piles are redriven for at least 24 inches. In these cases, the piles may be considered to have sufficient bearing resistance when the specified blow count criteria is achieved in accordance with 455-5.11.1 and 455-5.11.2. Unless practical refusal is obtained as defined in 455-5.11.3,

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

set-checks or redrives for piles redriven less than 24 inches must be instrumented for pile acceptance.

4. Instrumented Set-Checks and Instrumented Pile Redrive: Use dynamic load tests using at least 6 hammer blows to determine whether the pile bearing is sufficient. The pile may be considered to have sufficient bearing resistance when dynamic measurements demonstrate the static pile resistance exceeds the required pile resistance for at least one hammer blow and the average static pile resistance during the next five hammer blows exceeds 95% of the required pile resistance. If the pile is advanced farther, the static pile resistance during all subsequent blows must exceed 90% of the required pile resistance.

**455-5.11.5 Pile Heave:** Pile heave is the upward movement of a pile from its originally driven elevation. Drive the piles in an appropriate sequence to minimize the effects of heave and lateral displacement of the ground. Monitor piles previously driven in a pile group for possible heave during the driving of the remaining piles. Take elevation measurements to determine the magnitude of the movement of piles and the ground surface resulting from the driving process. Redrive all piles that have heaved 1/4 inches or more.

**455-5.11.6 Piles with Insufficient Bearing:** When the bearing capacity of any pile is less than the required bearing capacity, the Contractor may splice the pile and continue driving or may extract the pile and drive a pile of greater length, or drive additional piles.

**455-5.11.7 Optional Soil Set-up approach:** If the Contractor so desires, it may consider soil set-up. Production piles that are driven to less than the Nominal Bearing Resistance (NBR) may be accepted based on the anticipated soil setup without set checks on all piles, only if the following criteria are met:

- (a) Pile tip penetration satisfies the minimum penetration requirement following 455-5.9.
- (b) End of Initial Drive (EOID) resistance exceeds 1.10 times the Factored Design Load for the pile bent/pier, as determined by the dynamic testing or blow count criteria.
- (c) The Resistance Factor for computing NBR is taken from the following table:

Resistance Factors for Pile Installation Using Soil Setup (all structures)				
Loading	Design Method	Construction QC Method	Resistance Factor, $\phi$	
			Blow Count Criteria <sup>4</sup>	100% Dynamic Testing <sup>5</sup>
Compression	Davisson Capacity	EDC <sup>1</sup> , or PDA and CAPWAP <sup>2</sup>	0.55	0.60
		Static Load Testing <sup>3</sup>	0.65	0.70
		Statnamic Load Testing <sup>3</sup>	0.60	0.65
Uplift	Skin Friction	EDC <sup>1</sup> , or PDA and CAPWAP <sup>2</sup>	0.45	0.50
		Static Load Testing <sup>3</sup>	0.55	0.55

1. Using the analysis methods published by Tran et al (2012).  
 2. Dynamic Load Testing and Signal Matching Analysis.  
 3. Used to confirm the results of Dynamic Load Testing and Signal Matching Analysis.  
 4. Initial drive of production piles using Blow Count Criteria.  
 5. Initial drive of all piles accepted by results of Dynamic Testing of all blows.



Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

(d) At least one test pile is driven at each bent/pier with a successful set check at the anticipated production pile tip elevations and one of the following sets of dynamic load testing conditions are met at each bent/pier.

1. The bearing of at least 10% of piles in the bent/pier (round up to the next whole number) is confirmed by instrumented set-check, and all test piles and instrumented set-checks demonstrate the pile resistance exceeds the NBR within seven days after EOID

2. The bearing of at least 20% of piles in the bent/pier (round up to the next whole number) is confirmed by instrumented set-check, and all test piles and instrumented set-checks demonstrate the pile resistance exceeds the NBR within 21 days after EOID.

(e) All uninstrumented piles are driven deeper and to a greater EOID resistance than the EOID resistance of all instrumented production piles in the same bent/pier.

#### **455-5.12 Methods to Determine Pile Capacity:**

**455-5.12.1 General:** Dynamic load tests using an externally mounted instrument system and signal matching analyses or embedded gauges will determine pile capacity for all structures or projects unless otherwise shown on the Plans. Notify the Engineer two working days prior to placement of piles within the template and at least one working day prior to driving piles.

#### **455-5.12.2 Wave Equation:**

1. General: Use Wave Equation Analysis for Piles (WEAP) programs to evaluate the suitability of the proposed driving system (including the hammer, follower, capblock and pile cushions) as well as to estimate the driving resistance, in blows per 12 inches or blows per inch, to achieve the pile bearing requirements and to evaluate pile driving stresses.

Use Wave Equation Analyses to show the hammer meets the requirements described in 455-5.3.

2. Required Equipment for Driving: Hammer acceptance is solely based on satisfactory field trial including dynamic load test results and Wave Equation Analysis. Supply a hammer system that meets the requirements described in the specifications based on satisfactory field performance.

In the event piles require different hammer sizes, the Contractor may elect to drive with more than one size hammer or with a variable energy hammer, provided the hammer is properly sized and cushioned, will not damage the pile, and will develop the required resistance.

#### **3. Maximum Allowed Pile Stresses:**

a. General: The maximum allowed driving stresses for concrete, steel, and timber piles are given below. In the event dynamic load tests show that the hammer will overstress the pile, modify the driving system or method of operation as required to prevent overstressing the pile. In such cases provide additional cushioning, reduce the stroke, or make other appropriate agreed upon changes.

b. Prestressed Concrete Piles: Use the following equations to determine the maximum allowed pile stresses:

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

$$s_{apc} = 0.7 f'_c - 0.75 f_{cpe} \quad (1)$$

$$s_{apt} = 6.5 (f'_c)^{0.5} + 1.05 f_{cpe} \quad (2a) \text{ for piles less than 50 feet long}$$

$$s_{apt} = 3.25 (f'_c)^{0.5} + 1.05 f_{cpe} \quad (2b) \text{ for piles 50 feet long and greater}$$

$$s_{apt} = 500 \quad (2c) \text{ within 20 feet of a mechanical splice}$$

where:

$s_{apc}$  = maximum allowed pile compressive stress, psi

$s_{apt}$  = maximum allowed pile tensile stress, psi

$f'_c$  = specified minimum compressive strength of concrete, psi

$f_{cpe}$  = effective prestress (after all losses) at the time of driving, psi, taken as 0.8 times the initial prestress force divided by the minimum net concrete cross sectional area of the pile ( $f_{cpe} = 0$  for dowel spliced piles).

c. Steel Piles: Ensure the maximum pile compression and tensile stresses measured during driving are no greater than 0.9 times the yield strength ( $0.9 f_y$ ) of the steel.

d. Timber Piles: Ensure the maximum pile compression and tensile stresses measured during driving are no greater than 3.6 ksi for Southern Pine and Pacific Coast Douglas Fir and 0.9 of the ultimate parallel to the grain strength for piles of other wood.

**455-5.12.3 Temporary Piles:** Submit for the Engineers review, an analysis signed and sealed by the GFDEOR which establishes the pile lengths for temporary piles. Submit for the Engineer's acceptance, a Wave Equation analysis signed and sealed by the GFDEOR which establishes the driving criteria for temporary piles at least five working days prior to driving temporary production piles. The required driving resistance is equal to the sum of the factored design load plus the scour and down drag resistances shown in the Plans, divided by the appropriate resistance factor or the nominal bearing resistance shown in the Plans, whichever is higher:

The maximum resistance factor is 0.45 when only wave equation analysis is performed. However, a larger resistance factor may be applicable when additional testing is provided by the GFDEOR in accordance with Section 3.5.6 of Volume 1 of the FDOT Structures Manual.

**455-5.12.4 Dynamic Load Tests:** Dynamic load testing consists of estimating pile capacity by the analysis of electronic data collected from blows of the hammer during driving of an instrumented pile in accordance with 455-5.14.

**455-5.12.5 Static Load Tests:** Static load testing consists of applying a static load to the pile to determine its capacity. Use the Modified Quick Test Procedure in accordance with 455-2.2.1.

**455-5.12.6 Fender Pile Installation:** For piles used in fender systems, regardless of type or size of pile, either drive them full length or jet the piles to within 2 feet of cutoff and drive to cutoff elevation to seat the pile. The Engineer will not require a specific driving resistance unless noted in the Plans. Use methods and equipment for installation that do not

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

damage the piles. If the method or equipment used causes damage to the pile, modify the methods or equipment.

**455-5.12.7 Structures Without Test Piles:** For structures without 100% dynamic testing or test piles, dynamically test the first pile(s) in each bent or pier at locations shown in the Plans to determine the blow count criteria for the remaining piles. Dynamically test at least 5% of the piles at each bent or pier (rounded up to the next whole number).

**455-5.13 Test Piles:**

**455-5.13.1 General:** All test piles will have dynamic load tests. Drive piles of the same cross-section and type as the permanent piles shown in the Plans, in order to determine any or all of the following:

1. Installation criteria for the piles.
2. Nature of the soil.
3. Lengths of permanent piles required for the work.
4. Driving resistance characteristics of the various soil strata.
5. Amount of work necessary to obtain minimum required pile penetration.
6. The ability of the driving system to do the work.
7. The need for point protection.
8. Verify the bearing stratum is of sufficient thickness to prevent punching shear failure.

Because test piles are exploratory in nature, drive them harder (within the limits of practical refusal), deeper, and to a greater bearing resistance than required for the permanent piling. Except for test piles which are to be statically or Statnamically load tested, drive test piles their full length or to practical refusal. Splice test piles which have been driven their full length and have developed only minimal required bearing and proceed with further driving.

As a minimum, unless otherwise accepted by the Engineer, do not cease driving of test piles until obtaining the required bearing capacity continuously, where the blow count is increasing, for 10 feet unless reaching practical refusal first. For test piles which are to be statically or Statnamically load tested, ignore this minimum and drive these piles as anticipated for the production piles.

When test piles attain practical refusal prior to attaining minimum penetration, perform all work necessary to attain minimum penetration and the required bearing. Where practical, use water jets to break the pile loose for further driving. Where jetting is impractical, extract the pile and install a preformed pile hole through which driving will continue. Install instruments on all test piles.

**455-5.13.2 Location of Test Piles:** Drive all test piles in the position of permanent piles at the designated locations. Ensure that all test piles designated to be statically load tested are plumb. In the event that all the piles are battered at a static load test site, an out-of-position location for driving a plumb pile for the static load test may be selected.

**455-5.13.3 Equipment for Driving:** Use the same hammer and equipment for driving test piles as for driving the permanent piles. Also use the same equipment to redrive piles.

**455-5.14 Dynamic Load Tests:** Take dynamic measurements during the driving of piles designated in the Plans. Provide all personnel, materials and equipment for dynamic testing. For concrete piles, install instruments prior to driving and monitor all blows delivered to the pile. For

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

steel production piles, the Engineer may accept instrumented set checks or redrives. Perform dynamic load tests to evaluate the following:

1. Suitability of the driving equipment, including hammer, capblock, pile cushion, and any proposed follower.

2. Pile capacity.

3. Pile stresses.

4. Energy transfer to pile.

5. Distribution of soil resistance.

6. Soil variables including quake and damping.

7. Hammer-pile-soil system for Wave Equation analyses.

8. Pile installation problems.

Either install embedded gauges in the piles in accordance with Standard Plans, Index 455-003, or attach instruments (strain transducers to measure force and accelerometers to measure acceleration) with bolts to the pile for dynamic testing.

Monitor the stresses in the piles with the dynamic test equipment during driving to ensure the maximum allowed stresses are not exceeded. If necessary, add additional cushioning, replace the cushions, or reduce the hammer stroke to maintain stresses below the maximum allowable. If dynamic test equipment measurements indicate non-axial driving, immediately realign the driving system. If the cushion is compressed to the point that a change in alignment of the hammer will not correct the problem, add cushioning or change the cushion.

Drive the pile to the required penetration and resistance.

Do not use a cold diesel hammer for a set-check. Generally, warm up the hammer by driving another pile or applying at least 20 blows to a previously driven pile or to timber mats placed on the ground.

#### **455-5.15 Pile Lengths:**

**455-5.15.1 Test Pile Length:** Provide the length of test piles shown in the Plans or as directed by the GFDEOR.

#### **455-5.15.2 Production Pile Length**

The production pile lengths shall be the lengths determined by the DTE and the GFDEOR based on all information available before the driving of the permanent piles, including, but not limited to, information gained from the driving of test piles, dynamic load testing, static load testing, supplemental soil testing, etc. When authorized by the Department, soil freeze information obtained during set checks and pile redrives may be used to determine authorized pile lengths for sites with extreme soil conditions.

After completion of the test pile program, production pile lengths and driving criteria shall be established in a letter signed and sealed jointly by the DTE and the GFDEOR. The letter will contain an itemized list of authorized pile lengths as well as the blow count criteria for acceptance of the pile, minimum penetrations, maximum strokes, criteria to replace cushions and any other conditions and limitations deemed appropriate for the safe installation of the piles. Use these lengths for furnishing the permanent piling for the structure. At least two working days, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, prior to beginning of production pile driving, submit the letter and load test reports to the Engineer including the following electronic files (Windows compatible): dynamic testing data, signal matching data and results, and Wave Equation data and results.

If there are no test piles, provide the Production Pile Order Lengths in the Pile Data Table on the Structure Plans.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

**455-5.16 Allowable Driving Tolerances:**

**455-5.16.1 General:** Meet the tolerances described in this Subarticle for the piles that are free standing without lateral restraint (after the template is removed). After the piles are driven, do not move the piles laterally to force them to be within the specified tolerances, except to move battered piles laterally to overcome the dead load deflections caused by the pile's weight. When this is necessary, submit calculations signed and sealed by a Specialty Engineer to the Engineer that verify the amount of dead load deflection prior to moving any piles.

**455-5.16.2 Position:** Ensure that the final position of the pile head at cut-off elevation is no more than 3 inches, or 1/6 of the diameter of the pile, whichever is less, laterally in the X or Y coordinate from the Plan position indicated in the Plans.

**455-5.16.3 Axial Alignment:** Ensure that the axial alignment of the driven piles does not deviate by more than 1/4 inches per foot from the vertical or batter line indicated in the Plans.

**455-5.16.4 Elevation:** Ensure that the final elevation of the pile head is no more than 1-1/2 inches above, or more than 4 inches below, the elevation shown in the Plans, however in no case shall the pile be embedded less than 8 inches into the cap or footing.

For fender piles, cut off piles at the elevation shown in the Plans to a tolerance of plus 0.0 inches to minus 2.0 inches using sawing or other means as accepted by the Engineer to provide a smooth level cut.

**455-5.16.5 Deviation from Above Tolerances:** Have the Contractor's Engineer of Record perform an evaluation of the as built foundation to determine whether a foundation redesign or an increase in the loading requirements of the piles is needed. Include the signed and sealed evaluation as part of the certification package submitted in accordance with 455-5.19. If the evaluation indicates the foundation or the pile load requirements must be modified, propose a redesign to incorporate out of tolerance piles into pile caps or footings, at no expense to the Department. Submit signed and sealed redesign drawings and computations to the Engineer for review and acceptance. Do not begin any proposed construction until the redesign has been reviewed and accepted by the Engineer, excepted as noted in 455-5.20.

**455-5.17 Disposition of Pile Cut-offs, Test Piles, and Load Test Materials:**

**455-5.17.1 Pile Cut-offs:**

Take ownership of any unused cut-off lengths remaining and remove them from the right-of-way. Provide areas for their disposal.

**455-5.17.2 Test Piles:** Cut off, or build-up as necessary, test piles, and leave them in place as permanent piles. Extract and replace test piles driven in permanent position and found not suitable for use. Pull, or cut off at an elevation 2 feet below the ground surface or bottom of proposed excavation, test piles driven out of permanent position, and dispose of the removed portion of the test pile.

When test piles are required to be driven in permanent pile positions, the Contractor may elect to drive the test pile out of position provided that a replacement pile is furnished and driven in the position that was to be occupied by the test pile. Unless otherwise directed in the Plans or by the Engineer, retain ownership of test piles that are pulled or cut off and provide areas for their disposal.

**455-5.18 Recording:** Inspect and record all the pile installation activities, including but not limited to handling, jetting, predrilling, preforming and driving on the Department's Pile Driving Record form. Steel piles and dynamically tested concrete piles in accordance with 455-5.14 will not require inspection during handling. Keep a pile driving log for each pile installed

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

whether it is, or is not, instrumented. Within one working day after completing the installation of a pile, submit the Pile Driving Record to the Engineer.

**455-5.19 Foundation Certification Packages:** Submit certification packages of pile foundations to the Engineer prior to Pile Verification Testing. A separate Foundation Certification Package must be submitted for each foundation unit. A foundation unit is defined as all the piles within one bent or pier for a specific bridge for each phase of construction. Each Foundation Certification Package shall contain an original certification letter signed and sealed by the GFDEOR certifying the piles have the required axial capacity including compression and uplift, lateral stability, pile integrity, settlements will not affect the functionality of the structure, and that the inspection of the pile installation was performed under the supervision of the GFDEOR. The package shall also include all pile driving logs, EDC records, all supplemental dynamic testing raw data and analyses for the foundation unit, and the signed and sealed evaluation performed to address out of tolerance piles in accordance with 455-5.16.5. The certification shall not be contingent on any future repair or testing, or any approval by the Engineer.

For foundation units where all piles are dynamically load tested by the same DTE, the foundation certification package may be prepared by the DTE, and the DTE may sign and seal the foundation layout and pile data table to reflect as-built conditions if the DTE is prequalified under the appropriate category in Florida Administrative Code (F.A.C.) 14-75.

**455-5.20 Verification:** One working day, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, after receipt of the Foundation Certification Package, the Engineer will determine whether a pile in that foundation unit will be selected for verification testing. Based on its review of the certification package, the Engineer may or may not choose a pile for verification testing in any or all foundation units. For the pile selected by the Engineer for verification testing, the Engineer will provide the dynamic load test equipment and personnel for the Pile Verification Testing. Provide the driving equipment and pile driving crew for the Pile Verification Testing and provide support as needed to prepare the piles for testing. The Engineer will provide the results of the verification testing and identify additional needs for verification testing within one working day of testing.

If the capacity or integrity of any pile is found to be deficient, the Engineer will reject the entire certification package for the foundation unit, and the Contractor shall:

1. Correct the deficiency;
2. Correct the process that led to the deficiency;
3. Demonstrate to the Engineer that the remainder of the piles in the

foundation unit are acceptable, including additional dynamic load tests to verify pile capacity and integrity, and;

4. Recertify the foundation unit.

One working day, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, after receipt of the recertification, the Engineer shall then determine whether additional verification testing is required in that foundation unit. If the capacity or integrity of a verification pile is found to be deficient, additional cycles of deficiency correction and verification testing shall be completed until no more pile capacity or integrity deficiencies are detected or the design is modified accordingly. Piles shall not be cut-off nor bent/pier caps placed prior to successful completion of the Pile Verification Testing Program for that foundation unit. In case of disagreement of dynamic testing results, the Engineer's results will be final and will be used for acceptance.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

On land foundation units or water foundation units when the pile cutoff is at least six feet above mean high water, the Contractor may cut-off piles prior to a complete submittal of the Certification Package or to a successful completion of the Pile Verification Testing Program at its own risk. If any piles in a foundation unit are cut-off prior to the submittal of a certification package or completion of the Pile Verification Testing Program and the Engineer determines that verification testing is required, the Contractor shall perform, at no expense to the Department, any work and labor required to expose any pile selected for verification to allow the installation of the instruments in dry conditions and to provide references and access to the Engineer for such testing. Piles experiencing damage during the verification testing or requiring build-up after the verification shall be repaired by the Contractor at no expense to the Department. No pile bent/cap shall be poured prior to successful completion of the Pile Verification Testing Program for that foundation unit or notification by the Engineer that no verification will be required.

#### **455-6 Timber Piling.**

**455-6.1 Description:** Drive timber piles of the kind and dimensions specified in the Plans at the locations and to the elevations shown in the Plans.

**455-6.2 Materials:** Meet the timber piling requirements of Section 953. Treat the piles according to the applicable provisions of Section 955. Treat all cuts and drilled holes in accordance with 470-3.

#### **455-6.3 Preparation for Driving:**

**455-6.3.1 Caps:** Protect the heads of timber piles during driving, using a cap of approved type, that will distribute the hammer blow over the entire cross-section of the pile. When necessary, cut the head of the pile square before beginning pile driving.

**455-6.3.2 Collars:** Provide collars or bands to protect piles against splitting and brooming at no expense to the Department.

**455-6.3.3 Shoes:** Provide piles shod with metal shoes, of a design satisfactory to the Engineer, at no expense to the Department. Shape pile tips to receive the shoe and install according to the manufacturer's directions.

**455-6.4 Storage and Handling:** Store and handle piles in the manner necessary to avoid damage to the piling. Take special care to avoid breaking the surface of treated piles. Do not use cant dogs, hooks, or pike poles when handling and storing the piling.

**455-6.5 Cutting Off:** Saw off the tops of all timber piles at the elevation indicated in the Plans. Saw off piles which support timber caps to the exact plane of the superimposed structure so that they exactly fit. Withdraw and replace broken, split, or misplaced piles.

**455-6.6 Build-ups:** The Engineer will not permit splices or build-ups for timber piles. Extract piles driven below Plan elevation and drive a longer pile.

#### **455-6.7 Pile Heads:**

**455-6.7.1 Piles with Timber Caps:** On piles wider than the timber caps, dress off the part of the pile head projecting beyond the sides of the cap to a slope of 45 degrees. Coat the cut surface with the required preservative and then place a sheet of copper, with a weight of 10 ounces per square foot or greater, meeting the requirements of ASTM B370. Provide a cover measuring at least 4 inches more in each dimension greater than the diameter of the pile. Bend the cover down over the pile and fasten the edges with large head copper nails or three wraps of No. 12 copper wire.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

**455-6.7.2 Fender and Bulkhead Piles:** Paint the heads of fender piles and of bulkhead piles with preservative and then cover with copper as provided above for piles supporting timber caps.

#### **455-7 Prestressed Concrete Piling.**

**455-7.1 Description:** Provide prestressed concrete piles that are manufactured, cured, and driven in accordance with the Contract Documents. Provide piles full length without splices when transported by barge or the pile length is less than or equal to 120 feet. When piles are transported by truck and the pile length exceeds 120 feet or the maximum length for a 3-point pick-up according to Standard Plans, Index 455-001, and splicing is desired, provide minimal splices. Include the cost of the splices in the cost of the pile.

**455-7.2 Manufacture:** Fabricate piles in accordance with Section 450. When embedded gauges will be used for dynamic load testing, supply and install in square prestressed concrete piles in accordance with Standard Plans Index 455-003. Ensure the embedded gauges are installed by personnel approved by the manufacturer.

#### **455-7.3 Storage and Handling:**

**455-7.3.1 Time of Driving Piles:** Drive prestressed concrete piles at any time after the concrete has been cured in accordance with Section 450, and the concrete compressive strength is equal to or greater than the specified 28-day compressive strength.

**455-7.3.2 Storage:** Support piles on adequate dunnage both in the prestress yard and at the job site in accordance with the locations shown in the Standard Plans to minimize undue bending stresses or creating a sweep or camber in the pile.

**455-7.3.3 Handling:** Handle and store piles in the manner necessary to eliminate the danger of fracture by impact or of undue bending stresses in handling or transporting the piles from the forms and into the leads. In general, lift concrete piles by means of a suitable bridge or slings attached to the pile at the locations shown in the Standard Plans. Construct slings used to handle piles of a fabric material or braided wire rope constructed of six or more wire ropes which will not mar the corners or the surface finish of the piles. Do not use chains to handle piles. During transport, support concrete piles at the lifting locations shown in the Standard Plans or fully support them throughout 80% or more of their length. In handling piles for use in salty or brackish water, exercise special care to avoid damaging the surface and corners of the pile. If an alternate transportation support arrangement is desired, submit calculations, signed and sealed by the Specialty Engineer, for acceptance by the Engineer prior to transporting the pile. Calculations must show that the pile can be transported without exceeding the bending moments calculated using the support locations shown in the Plans.

**455-7.4 Cracked Piles:** The Engineer will reject any pile that becomes cracked in handling to the point that a transverse or longitudinal crack extends through the pile, shows failure of the concrete as indicated by spalling of concrete on the main body of the pile adjacent to the crack, which in the opinion of the Engineer will not withstand driving stresses, or becomes damaged during installation. The Engineer will not reject any pile for the occasional minor surface hairline cracking caused by shrinkage.

Do not drive piling with irreparable damage, which is defined as any cracks that extend through the pile cross-sectional area that are, or will be, below ground or water level at the end of driving. Remove and replace broken piles or piles cracked to the extent described above at no expense to the Department. The Engineer will accept cracks less than 0.005 inches which do not extend through the pile. Using approved methods, cut off and splice or build-up to



Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

cut-off elevation piles with cracks greater than 0.005 inches at the pile head or above ground or water level, and piles with cracks above ground or water level which extend through the cross-sectional area of the pile. The Engineer, at his discretion, may require correction of pile damage or pile cracks by cutting down the concrete to the plane of sound concrete below the crack and rebuilding it to cut-off elevation, or the Engineer may reject the pile. Extract and replace rejected piles that cannot be repaired, at no expense to the Department.

Take appropriate steps to prevent the occurrence of cracking, whether due to handling, transporting or driving.

**455-7.5 Preparation for Transportation:** Cut strands flush with the surface of the concrete using an abrasive cutting blade before transporting the piles from the casting yard.

Cut and patch the metal lifting devices in accordance with 450-9.2.1.

**455-7.6 Method of Driving:** Unless otherwise directed, drive piles by a hammer or by means of a combination of water jets and hammer when jetting is allowed. When using jets in combination with a hammer, withdraw the jets and drive the pile by the hammer alone to secure final penetration and to rigidly fix the tip end of the pile. Keep jets in place if they are being used to continuously eliminate the soil resistance in the scour zone.

**455-7.7 Extensions and Build-ups Used to Increase Production Lengths:**

**455-7.7.1 General:** Where splices, extensions and build-ups for concrete piles are necessary, construct them in accordance with Standard Plans, Index 455-002.

These requirements are not applicable to specially designed piling. Make splices for special pile designs as shown in the Plans.

**455-7.7.2 Extensions to be Driven or Those 21 feet or Longer:** Construct extensions to be driven or extensions 21 feet or longer in length in accordance with the details shown in the Plans and in a manner including the requirements, sequences, and procedures outlined below:

1. Cast a splice section in accordance with Section 450 with the dowel steel in the correct position and alignment.
2. Drill dowel holes using an approved steel template that will position and align the drill bit during drilling. Drill holes a minimum of 2 inches deeper than the length of the dowel to be inserted.
3. Clean the drilled dowel holes by inserting a high-pressure air hose to the bottom of the hole and blowing the hole clean from the bottom upward. Eliminate any oil, dust, water, and other deleterious materials from the holes and the concrete surfaces to be joined.
4. Place forms around joints between the pile sections.
5. Mix the adhesive components in accordance with the manufacturer's directions. Do not mix sand or any other filler material with the epoxy components unless it is prepackaged by the manufacturer for this specific purpose. Use adhesives meeting the requirements of Section 926 for Type B Epoxy Compounds.
6. After ensuring that all concrete surfaces are dry, fill the dowel holes with the adhesive material.
7. Insert the dowels of the spliced section into the adhesive filled holes of the bottom section and position the spliced section so that the axes of the two sections are in concentric alignment and the ends of the abutting sections are spaced 1/2 inches apart. The Contractor may use small steel spacers of the required thickness provided they have 3 inches or more of cover after completing the splice. Fill the space between the abutting sections completely with the adhesive.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

8. Secure the spliced sections in alignment until the adhesive is cured in accordance with the manufacturer’s directions for the time appropriate with the prevailing ambient temperatures. Do not utilize the crane to secure the pile extension during the adhesive cure time. Utilize alignment braces to maintain the proper pile alignment during the epoxy cure time.

9. After curing is completed, remove alignment braces and forms and clean and dress the spliced area to match the pile dimensions.

When dowel splices need to be driven, perform dynamic instrumentation during the driving of each dowel spliced pile to monitor and control the stresses and to verify the splicing integrity. Replace any damaged pile splices in accordance with 455-3. Provide the Engineer 48 hours advance notification prior to driving spliced piles.

**455-7.7.3 Precast Reinforced Non-Drivable Build-ups less than 21 feet:**

Construct precast reinforced non-drivable build-ups less than 21 feet in accordance with the requirements of this Subarticle, Section 346, and Section 400. Provide the same material for the form surfaces for precast build-ups as was used to form the prestressed piles. Use concrete of the same mix as used in the prestressed pile and dimension the cross-section the same as piling being built up. Install build-ups as specified in 455-7.7.2(2) through 455-7.7.2(9). Apply to the build-ups the same surface treatment or sealant applied to the prestressed piles.

**455-7.8 Pre-Planned Splices:** Construct splices in accordance with the dowel splice method contained in the Standard Plan Indexes or using proprietary splices which are listed on the Department’s Approved Product List (APL). Splice test piles in the same manner as the production piles. Include in the pile installation plan, the chosen method of splicing and the approximate locations of the splice. Generally, place the splice at approximately the midpoint between the estimated pile tip and the ground surface, considering scour if applicable. Stagger the splice location between adjacent piles by a minimum of 10 feet. Obtain the Engineer’s approval prior to constructing any pile sections. Construct piles which are to be spliced using the dowel splice with preformed dowel holes in the bottom section and embedded dowels in the upper section.

When dowel splices need to be driven, perform dynamic instrumentation during the driving of each dowel spliced pile to monitor and control the stresses and verify the splicing integrity. Replace any damaged pile splices in accordance with 455-3. Provide the Engineer 48 hours advance notification prior to driving spliced piles.

Mechanical pile splices must be capable of developing the following capacities in the pile section unless shown otherwise in the Plans and capable of being installed without damage to the pile or splice:

1. Compressive strength = (Pile Cross sectional area) x (28-day concrete strength)

2. Tensile Strength = (Pile Cross sectional area) x 900 psi

Table 455-1	
Pile Size (inches)	Bending Strength (kip-feet)
18	245
20	325
24	600
30	950

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

**455-7.9 Pile Cut-offs:** After the completion of driving, cut piles off which extend above the cut-off elevation with an abrasive saw. Make the cut the depth necessary to cleanly cut through the prestressed strands. Take ownership and dispose of cut-off sections not used elsewhere as allowed by this Section.

#### **455-8 Steel Piling.**

**455-8.1 Description:** Furnish, splice, drive, and cut off structural steel shapes to form bearing piles. Include in this work the preparation of a smooth and square pile top meeting the requirements of ASTM A252 or API 5L prior to driving, installation of structural steel bracing by bolting or welding, construction of splices and the filling of pipe piles with the materials specified in 455-8.9.

**455-8.2 Material:** For the material in steel piles, pile bracing, scabs, wedges, and splices, meet the requirements of Section 962.

**455-8.3 Pile Splices:** Order and use the full authorized pile length where practicable. Do not splice to obtain authorized lengths less than 40 feet except when shown in the Plans. Locate all splices in the authorized pile length in portions of the pile expected to be at least 15 feet below the final ground surface after driving. When it is not practicable to provide authorized pile lengths longer than 40 feet in a single length, use no more than one field splice per additional 40 feet of authorized pile length. Shop splices may be used to join single lengths of pile which are at least 20 feet in length. One shorter segment of pile may be used to achieve the authorized pile length when needed.

Where the pile length authorized is not sufficient to obtain the required bearing value or penetration, order an additional length of pile and splice it to the original length.

Make all splices in accordance with details shown in the Plans and in compliance with the general requirements of AWS D1.1 or American Petroleum Institute Specification 5L (API 5L).

**455-8.4 Welding:** Make all welded connections to steel piles by electric arc welding, in accordance with details shown in the Plans and in compliance with the general requirements of AWS D1.5. Electroslag welding is not permitted. Welds will be inspected by visual methods.

**455-8.5 Pile Heads and Tips:** Cut off all piles at the elevation shown in the Plans. If using a cutting torch, make the surface as smooth as practical.

Where foundation material is so dense that the Contractor cannot drive the pile to the required penetration and firmly seat it without danger of crumpling the tip, reinforce the tips with cast steel point protectors. Construct point protectors in one piece of cast steel meeting the requirements of ASTM A27, Grade 65-35 heat treated to provide full bearing for the piles. Attach points by welding according to the recommendations of the manufacturer.

**455-8.6 Pile Bent Bracing Members:** Place structural steel sway and cross bracing, and all other steel tie bracing, on steel pile bents and bolt or weld in place as indicated in the Plans. Where piles are not driven into position in exact alignment as shown in the Plans, furnish and place fills and shims as required to square and line up faces of flanges for cross bracing.

**455-8.7 Coating:** Coat exposed parts of steel piling, wedging, bracing, and splices in accordance with the provisions for coating structural steel as specified in Section 560.

**455-8.8 Storage and Handling:** While handling or transporting the piles from the point of origin and into the leads, store and handle in the manner necessary to avoid damage due to bending stresses. In general, lift steel piles by means of a suitable bridge or a sling attached to the

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

pile at appropriate points to prevent damage. Lift the pile from the horizontal position in a manner that will prevent damage due to bending of the flanges and/or web.

**455-8.9 Filling Pipe Piles:** Ensure closed-end pipe piles are watertight. When required by the Plans, fill pipe piles with the specified materials. Use clean concrete sands and concrete meeting the requirements of Section 346. Place concrete in open ended pipes containing water using methods in accordance with 455-15.9 with modified tremie and pump line sizes. Concrete may be placed directly into pipes which are dry. Construct and place reinforcement cages in accordance with 455-16, except the minimum number of spacers per level is three. Reinforcement cages may be installed before concrete placement or after concrete placement is completed if proper alignment and position is obtainable.

#### **455-9 Sheet Piling.**

**455-9.1 Description:** Leave permanent piling in place as part of the finished work and remove temporary piling after each construction phase unless otherwise authorized by the Engineer.

**455-9.2 Materials:** Meet the following requirements:

Concrete .....	Section 346
Bar Reinforcement .....	Section 931
Prestressing Reinforcement .....	Section 933
Steel Sheet Piles* .....	Section 962

\*For temporary steel sheet piles meet the requirements specified in the Plans.

**455-9.3 Steel Sheet Piling:** Drive steel sheet piling and cut off true to line and grade. Install steel sheet piling with a suitable hammer. Remove and replace any section damaged during handling and installation at no additional expense to the Department.

**455-9.3.1 Method of Installation:** Where rock or strong material is encountered such that the sheet piles cannot be set to grade by driving, remove the strong material by other acceptable means, such as excavation and backfilling, drilling or by punching.

#### **455-9.4 Concrete Sheet Piling:**

**455-9.4.1 Description:** Ensure that concrete sheet piling is of prestressed concrete construction and manufactured, cured, and installed in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

**455-9.4.2 Manufacture of Piles:** Ensure that the piles are fabricated in accordance with Section 450.

**455-9.4.3 Method of Installation:** Jet concrete sheet piling to grade where practical. Use a minimum of two jets. Provide water at the nozzles of sufficient volume and pressure to freely erode material adjacent to the piles. Where encountering rock or strong material, such that the sheet piles cannot be set to grade by jetting, remove the strong materials by other acceptable means, such as excavation and backfilling, drilling or by punching with a suitable punch.

**455-9.4.4 Grouting and Caulking:** Concrete sheet piles are generally detailed to have tongues and grooves on their lower ends, and double grooves on their upper ends. Where so detailed, after installation, clean the grooves of all sand, mud, or debris, and fully grout the grooves. Use approved plastic bags (sheaths) which will meet the shape and length of the groove to be grouted to contain the plastic grout within the double grooves. Provide grout composed of one part cement and two parts sand. Use clean A-3 sand or sand meeting the requirements of Section 902 in this grout. In lieu of sand-cement grout, the Contractor may use concrete meeting

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

the requirements of Section 347, using small gravel or crushed stone coarse aggregate. Deposit the grout through a grout pipe placed within a watertight plastic sheath (bag) extending the full depth of the double grooves and which, when filled, completely fills the slot formed by the double grooves.

**455-9.5 Storage and Handling:** Handle and store all sheet piles in a manner to prevent damage. Handle long sheet piles with fabric slings or braided wire rope constructed of six or more wire ropes placed at appropriate lift points to prevent damage due to excessive bending.

#### **455-10 Pile Installation Plan (PIP).**

**455-10.1 General:** At the preconstruction conference or at least 15 days prior to driving the first pile, submit a Pile Installation Plan for review by the Engineer. The PIP shall be used to govern all pile installation activities. In the event that deviations from the PIP are observed, the Engineer may perform Independent Verification Testing/Review of the Contractor's equipment, procedures, personnel and PIP at any time during production pile driving. If, as determined by the Engineer, pile driving equipment, procedures and/or personnel for the PIP is deemed inadequate to consistently provide undamaged driven piling meeting the contract requirements, the Contractor's PIP acceptance may be withdrawn pending corrective actions. Production driving shall then cease and not restart until corrective actions have been taken and the PIP re-accepted.

Ensure the Pile Driving Installation Plan information includes the following:

1. List and size of proposed equipment including cranes, barges, driving equipment, jetting equipment, compressors, and preformed pile hole equipment on the Department's Pile Driving Installation Plan Form (Form No. 700-020-01). Include manufacturer's data sheets on hammers.
2. Methods to determine hammer energy in the field for determination of pile capacity. Include in the submittal necessary charts and recent calibrations for any pressure measuring equipment.
3. Detailed drawings of any proposed followers.
4. Detailed drawings of templates.
5. Details of proposed load test equipment and procedures, including recent calibrations of jacks and required load cells.
6. Sequence of driving of piles for each different configuration of pile layout.
7. Details of proposed features and procedures for protection of existing structures.
8. Required shop drawings for piles, cofferdams, etc.
9. Methods and equipment proposed to prevent displacement of piles during placement and compaction of fill within 15 feet of the piles.
10. Methods to prevent deflection of battered piles due to their own weight and to maintain their as-driven position until casting of the pile cap is complete.
11. Proposed pile splice locations and details of any proprietary splices anticipated to be used.
12. Methods and equipment proposed to prevent damage to voided or cylinder piles due to interior water pressure.
13. Name and experience record of pile driving superintendent or foreman in responsible charge of pile driving operations. Ensure the pile driving superintendent or

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

foreman in responsible charge of the pile driving operations has the experience requirements of 105-8.13 installing driven piles of the size and depth shown in the Plans.

14. The names of the CTQP qualified inspectors assigned to inspect the pile installation. If the Dynamic Testing Engineer is also a CTQP qualified pile driving inspector and is able to perform both operations, then an additional pile driving inspector is not required when driving piles using embedded sensors.

15. The quality control processes to ensure the required capacity is achieved in all piles. Include in the PIP the steps and analyses that would be performed when driving conditions change (such as unanticipated tip elevations, hammer modifications, presence of temporary piles and structures, preforming, changes, etc.).

16. The name and contact information for the single representative of the Contractor, independent of field operations personnel, to resolve to the Engineer's satisfaction conflicts in the driving procedures or interpretations of the driving criteria. This person shall be available within two hours notice, and shall have the authority to refer issues to higher levels (corporate, if needed).

17. A letter from the GFDEOR certifying concurrence with the PIP.

Notify the Engineer of any test pile driving and production pile driving at least 1 week prior to beginning the installation operations of any pile.

**455-10.2 Acceptance of the Pile Installation Plan:** The Engineer will evaluate the PIP for conformance with the Contract Documents. Within five working days, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, after receipt of the plan, the Engineer will notify the Contractor of any comments and additional information required and/or changes that may be necessary to satisfy the Contract Documents. Submit changes and respond to the Engineer's comments and allow at least two working days, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, for the Engineer to review the revised PIP.

All equipment and procedures are subject to satisfactory field performance. Make required changes to correct unsatisfactory field performance. The Engineer will give final acceptance after the Contractor makes necessary modifications. Do not make any changes in the driving system after acceptance without a revised PIP with concurrence of the GFDEOR and acceptance by the Engineer. A hammer repaired on site or removed from the site and returned is considered to have its performance altered (efficiency increased or decreased), which is considered a change in the driving system. Perform a dynamic load test in accordance with 455-5.14 on the first pile driven with this hammer to confirm the driving criteria is still appropriate at no additional compensation.

Acceptance of the PIP by the Engineer does not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to perform the work in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Engineer's acceptance is not a guarantee that the chosen methods and equipment are capable of obtaining the required results; this responsibility lies with the Contractor.

ARTICLE 455-11 is deleted:

#### **455-12 Basis of Payment.**

Contract Price includes all labor, equipment and materials required for furnishing, installing, and certifying completed pile foundations, in place and accepted. No separate payment will be made for any items of work associated with the construction of piling. No additional payment or adjustments will be made for set-checks, re-drives, dynamic load tests, pile

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

instrumentations, splice installations and driving, build-ups, pile extractions, preformed holes or other associated activities.

## C. DRILLED SHAFTS

### 455-13 Description.

Construct drilled shaft foundations consisting of reinforced concrete drilled shafts.

### 455-14 Materials.

**455-14.1 Concrete:** Use concrete meeting the requirements of Section 346, unless otherwise shown in the Plans.

**455-14.2 Reinforcing Steel:** Meet the reinforcing steel requirements of Section 415.

**455-14.3 Polymer Slurry:** Use a product listed on the Department's Approved Product List (APL) meeting the requirements of 932-5.

### 455-15 Construction Methods and Equipment.

#### 455-15.1 General Requirements:

**455-15.1.1 Templates:** When drilling from a barge, provide a fixed template, adequate to maintain shaft position and alignment during all excavation and concreting operations. Do not use floating templates (attached to a barge). When the Contractor fails to properly maintain shaft position and alignment without use of a template when drilling on land, provide a fixed template, adequate to maintain shaft position and alignment during all excavation and concreting operations.

**455-15.1.2 Drilled Shaft Installation Plan (DSIP):** At the preconstruction conference or at least 15 days prior to constructing the first drilled shaft, submit a Drilled Shaft Installation Plan (DSIP) for review and acceptance by the Engineer. The DSIP will be used to govern all drilled shaft construction activities. In the event that deviations from the DSIP are observed, the Engineer may perform Independent Verification Testing/Review of the Contractor's equipment, procedures and personnel at any time during production drilled shaft construction. If, as determined by the Engineer, drilled shaft construction equipment, procedures or personnel is deemed inadequate to consistently provide drilled shafts meeting the contract requirements, the Contractor's DSIP may be withdrawn pending corrective actions. All drilled shaft construction activities shall then cease and not restart until corrective actions have been taken and the DSIP has been re-accepted.

Include in the DSIP the following details:

1. Name and experience record of drilled shaft superintendent or foreman in responsible charge of drilled shaft operations. Ensure the drilled shaft superintendent or foreman in responsible charge of the drilled shaft operations has the experience requirements of 105-8.13 installing drilled shafts of the size and depth shown in the Plans using the following methods:

- a. Wet Method (mineral and polymer slurry),
- b. Casings up to the length shown in the Plans,
- c. Shaft drilling operations on water under conditions as

shown in the Plans.

2. List and size of proposed equipment, including, but not limited to, cranes, drills, augers, bailing buckets, final cleaning equipment, desanding equipment, slurry

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

pumps, core sampling equipment, tremies or concrete pumps, and casings and equipment to install and remove casing.

3. Details of sequence of construction operations and sequence of shaft construction in bents or shaft groups.

4. Details of shaft excavation methods, including casing installation procedures.

5. Details of slurry, including proposed methods to mix, circulate, desand, test methods, and proposed CTQP certified technicians that will perform and document the fluid tests.

6. Details of proposed methods to clean the shaft excavation.

7. Details of shaft reinforcement, including methods to ensure centering/required cover, cage integrity during placement, placement procedures, cage support, and tie downs.

8. Details of concrete placement, including elapsed concrete placement times and proposed operational procedures for concrete tremie or pump, including initial placement, raising during placement, and overfilling of the shaft concrete. Include provisions to ensure proper final shaft cutoff elevation.

9. Details of casing removal when removal is required, including minimum concrete head in casing during removal.

10. Required submittals, including shop drawing and concrete design mixes.

11. Details of any required load tests, including equipment and procedures, and recent calibrations for any jacks or load cells.

12. Proposed Cross-Hole Sonic Logging (CSL) and Thermal Integrity Testing for Drilled (TITDS) Specialty Engineer to supervise field testing and report the test results.

13. Methods and equipment proposed to prevent displacement of casing and/or shafts during placement and compaction of fill.

14. Provide the make and model of the shaft inspection device, if applicable, and procedures for visual inspection.

15. Details of environmental control procedures used to prevent loss of slurry or concrete into waterways or other protected areas.

16. Proposed schedule for test shaft installation, load tests and production shaft installation.

17. For drilled shafts for constructed using polymer slurry, identify the polymer slurry, the pH and proposed viscosity ranges and a description of the mixing method to be used. Submit the contact information for the manufacturer's representative available for immediate contact during shaft construction and the representative's schedule of availability.

18. Methods to identify and remediate drilled shaft deficiencies.

19. Names of the CTQP qualified inspectors assigned to inspect the drilled shaft installation.

20. The name and contact information for the single representative of the Contractor, independent of field operations personnel, to resolve to the Engineer's satisfaction, conflicts in the drilled shaft installation procedures. This person shall be available within two hours notice, and shall have the authority to refer issues to higher levels (corporate, if needed).



Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

21. Procedure for grouting non-destructive testing access tubes.
22. A letter from the GFDEOR certifying concurrence with the

DSIP.

23. Other information shown in the Plans or requested by the Engineer.

#### **455-15.1.2.1 Acceptance of the Drilled Shaft Installation Plan (DSIP):**

The Engineer will evaluate the DSIP for conformance with the Contract Documents. Within five working days, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, after receipt of the plan, the Engineer will notify the Contractor of any comments and additional information required and/or changes that may be necessary to meet the above requirements and satisfy the Contract Documents. The Engineer will reject any part of the plan that does not meet specifications, plans or has the potential to affect the integrity of adjacent structures or negatively affect the environmental conditions. Submit changes agreed upon for reevaluation. The Engineer will notify the Contractor within two working days, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, after receipt of proposed changes of their acceptance or rejection. All equipment and procedures are subject to trial and satisfactory performance in the field.

Acceptance by the Engineer does not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to perform the work in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Engineer's acceptance is not a guarantee that the chosen methods and equipment are capable of obtaining the required results, this responsibility lies with the Contractor.

**455-15.1.3 General Methods & Equipment:** Perform the excavations required for the shafts, through whatever materials encountered, to the dimensions and elevations shown in the Contract Documents, using methods and equipment suitable for the intended purpose and the materials encountered. Provide drilling tools with a diameter not smaller than one inch of the shaft diameter required in the Plans. Provide equipment capable of constructing shafts supporting bridges to a depth equal to the deepest shaft shown in the Plans plus 15 foot or plus three times the shaft diameter, whichever is greater, except when the Plans require equipment capable of constructing shafts to a deeper depth. Provide equipment capable of constructing shafts supporting sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures to a depth equal to the deepest shaft shown in the Plans plus 5 feet.

Construct drilled shafts according to the Contract Documents using generally either the dry method, wet method, casing method, or permanent casing method as necessary to produce sound, durable concrete foundation shafts free of defects. Use the permanent casing method only when required by the Plans. When the Plans describe a particular method of construction, use this method. When the Plans do not describe a particular method, propose a method on the basis of its suitability to the site conditions and submit it for acceptance by the Engineer.

Set a suitable temporary removable surface casing from at least 1 foot above the ground surface to at least 1-1/2 shaft diameters below the ground surface to prevent caving of the surface soils and to aid in maintaining shaft position and alignment. Do not use a temporary casing larger than 12 inches of the shaft diameter. Fill the oversized temporary casing with drilled shaft concrete at no additional expense to the Department. Withdraw the surface casing after concrete placement.

For drilled shafts installed to support sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures, provide temporary surface casings from at least 1 foot above the ground surface to at least 5 feet below the ground surface. For sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures foundations

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

located within permanent sidewalks or within 5 feet of curb sections, provide temporary surface casings from no lower than the top of sidewalk to at least 5 feet below the ground surface.

For drilled shafts installed to support sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures, do not attempt to excavate the shaft using plain water or natural slurry. Do not attempt to excavate the shaft using dry construction method unless specifically indicated in the Plans or approved by the Engineer.

**455-15.2 Dry Construction Method:** Use the dry construction method only at sites where the ground water table and soil conditions, generally stiff to hard clays or rock above the water table, make it feasible to construct the shaft in a relatively dry excavation and where the sides and bottom of the shaft are stable and may be visually inspected prior to placing the concrete.

In applying the dry construction method, drill the shaft excavation, remove accumulated seepage water and loose material from the excavation and place the shaft concrete in a relatively dry excavation.

Use the dry construction method only when shaft excavations, as demonstrated in a test hole, have 12 inches or less of seepage water accumulated over a four-hour period, the sides and bottom remain stable without detrimental caving, sloughing, or swelling for a four hour period, and the loose material and water can be satisfactorily removed prior to inspection and prior to placing concrete. Use the wet construction method or the temporary casing construction method for shafts that do not meet the requirements for the dry construction method.

**455-15.3 Wet Construction Method:** Use the wet construction method at all sites where it is impractical to provide a dry excavation for placement of the shaft concrete.

The wet construction method consists of keeping the shaft excavation filled with fluid (mineral slurry, polymer slurry, natural slurry or water), desanding and cleaning the slurry and final cleaning of the excavation by means of a bailing bucket, air lift, submersible pump or other suitable devices and placing the shaft concrete (with a tremie or concrete pump extending to the shaft bottom) which displaces the water or slurry during concreting of the shaft excavation.

Where drilled shafts are located in open water areas, construct the shafts by the wet method using exterior casings extending from above the water elevation into the ground to protect the shaft concrete from water action during placement and curing of the concrete. Install the exterior casing in a manner that will produce a positive seal at the bottom of the casing so that there is no intrusion or extrusion of water or other materials into or from the shaft excavation.

**455-15.4 Temporary Casing Construction Method:** Use the temporary casing method at all sites where it is inappropriate to use the dry or wet construction methods without the use of temporary casings other than surface casings. In this method, the casing is advanced prior to excavation and withdrawn after concrete placement. When a formation is reached that is nearly impervious, seal in the nearly impervious formation. Proceed with drilling as with the wet method to the projected depth. Proceed with the placement of the concrete as with the dry method. In the event seepage conditions prevent use of the dry method, complete the excavation and concrete placement using wet methods.

Where drilling through materials having a tendency to cave, advance the excavation by drilling in a mineral or polymer slurry. In the event that a caving layer or layers are encountered that cannot be controlled by slurry, install temporary removable casing through such caving layer or layers. The Engineer may require overreaming to the outside diameter of the casing. Take whatever steps are required to prevent caving during shaft excavation including

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

installation of deeper casings. If electing to remove a casing and replace it with a longer casing through caving soils, backfill the excavation. The Contractor may use soil previously excavated or soil from the site to backfill the excavation. The Contractor may use other acceptable methods which will control the size of the excavation and protect the integrity of the foundation soils to excavate through caving layers.

Before withdrawing the casing, ensure that the level of fresh concrete is at such a level that the fluid trapped behind the casing is displaced upward. As the casing is withdrawn, maintain the level of concrete within the casing so that fluid trapped behind the casing is displaced upward out of the shaft excavation without mixing with or displacing the shaft concrete.

The Contractor may use the casing method, when accepted by the Engineer, to construct shafts through weak caving soils that do not contribute significant shaft shear resistance. In this case, place a temporary casing through the weak caving soils before beginning excavation. Conduct excavation using the dry construction method where appropriate for site conditions and the wet construction method where the dry construction method is not appropriate. Withdraw the temporary casing during the concreting operations unless the Engineer accepts otherwise.

**455-15.5 Permanent Casing Construction Method:** Use the permanent casing method when required by the Plans. In this method, place a casing to the prescribed depth before beginning excavation. If the Contractor cannot attain full penetration, the Contractor may excavate through the casing and advance the casing until reaching the desired penetration.

Construct the shaft in accordance with 455-15.4 except for cutting the casing off at the prescribed elevation upon reaching the proper construction sequence and leaving the remainder of the casing in place.

**455-15.5.1 Temporary Extension of Permanent Casing:** When the wet method does not provide enough support to excavate and clean the drilled shaft extension below the permanent casing tip elevations shown in the Plans, the permanent casing may be temporarily extended to an elevation deeper than the tip elevation at no additional expense to the Department. The rock socket length must be extended as specified in 455-15.7 and the casing raised to the original casing tip elevation shown in the Plans after the concrete placement. Include details of this procedure in the DSIP for the Engineer's review and approval.

**455-15.5.2 Temporary Casing to Stabilize Excavation below Permanent Casing:** To stabilize the excavation below the permanent casing tip elevation, a temporary casing inside an oversized permanent casing may be used at no additional expense to the Department. The permanent casing must have an inside diameter no more than 6 inches larger than the drilled shaft diameter specified in the Plans.

The following requirements apply:

1. Excavate and clean the materials from inside the permanent casing. Ensure all materials are removed from the inside wall of the permanent casing.
2. Install the temporary casing prior to excavating below the permanent casing tip elevation. The temporary casing must have a minimum internal diameter equal to the shaft diameter required in the Plans.
3. If the temporary casing is advanced deeper than the minimum top of rock socket elevation as shown in the Plans, or the top of rock elevation if deeper, extend the rock socket length in accordance with 455-15.7.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

4. Place concrete in accordance with 455-15.9.3 through the temporary casing. Do not allow concrete to fall or overflow into the annular space between the temporary and permanent casing.

5. After placement of the concrete, remove the temporary casing in accordance with 455-15.4, 455-15.7 and 455-17. During withdrawal of the temporary casing, maintain adequate concrete head in both the temporary and permanent casings to avoid breaching, caving, or contamination of the concrete.

Include details of this procedure in the DSIP for the Engineer's review and approval.

**455-15.6 Excavations:** When pilot holes and/or load tests are performed, the GFDEOR shall use the pilot hole and load test results when load tests are performed to determine the production tip elevations and/or the installation criteria of the drilled shafts. Drilled shaft construction shall not begin until the proposed shaft tip elevations are accepted by the Engineer.

**455-15.6.1 Pilot Hole:** When pilot holes are shown in the Plans core a pilot hole, prior to shaft excavation, in accordance with ASTM D2113 Standard Practice for Rock Core Drilling and Sampling of Rock for Site Excavation and the Department's Soils & Foundations Handbook using a double or triple wall core barrel through part or all of the shaft, to a minimum depth of 3 times the diameter of the drilled shaft below the tip elevation shown in the Plans. Prior to excavating load test shafts, provide pilot holes to a minimum depth of three times the diameter of the drilled shaft below the tip elevation designed for these shafts. For test holes, provide pilot holes prior to excavation, to a minimum depth of 5 feet below the tip of the test hole.

**455-15.6.2 Cores:** Take cores to determine the character of the material directly below the shaft excavation when pilot borings are not performed at the shaft location. Provide equipment to retrieve the core from a depth of 5 times the diameter of the drilled shaft below the bottom of the drilled shaft excavation in accordance with ASTM D2113 Standard Practice for Rock Core Drilling and Sampling of Rock for Site Excavation. Cut the cores with an acceptable core barrel to a minimum depth of 3 times the diameter of the drilled shaft below the bottom of the drilled shaft excavation after completing the shaft excavation, as directed by the Engineer.

For cores or pilot holes, use only a double or triple wall core barrel designed:

1. to cut a core sample from 4 inches to 6 inches in diameter, at least 5 feet in length, and,
2. so that the sample of material cored can be removed from the shaft excavation and the core barrel in an undisturbed state.

When called for in the Plans and approved by the Engineer, substitute Standard Penetration Tests (SPT) using a drill rig equipped with an automatic hammer for coring.

Provide areas for the disposal of unsuitable materials and excess materials as defined in 120-5 that are removed from shaft excavations, and dispose of them in a manner meeting all environmental requirements.

Furnish the additional drilled shaft concrete over the theoretical amount required to complete filling any excavations for shafts which are larger than required by the Plans or authorized by the Engineer, at no expense to the Department.

**455-15.6.3 Production Shaft Tip Elevations:** After completion of load tests, pilot holes, rock cores and lab testing, the GFDEOR shall submit the required minimum rock socket lengths and shaft tip elevations to the Engineer in a signed and sealed letter for review and

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

acceptance. This letter shall include the assumptions and geotechnical parameters used, the report of core borings of all pilot holes, rock core records, lab testing, load test reports prepared in accordance with 455-2.11, and numerical analysis and calculations. Submit this letter at least three working days, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, prior to beginning production shaft construction. Additional data or analysis may be required by the Engineer.

Production shaft lengths may be based on the load transfer characteristics measured during the load test. End bearing characteristics may be based on load test results if the properties of the material below the tips of the production shafts meet or exceed the strength of the materials below the tip of the test shaft. If the theoretical bearing strength of the material below the tips of the production shafts is less than the theoretical bearing strength of the materials below the tip of the test shaft, the production shafts shall be extended to meet design capacity by side shear only, unless the end bearing resistance of the weaker material is verified by additional load testing.

**455-15.7 Casings:** Ensure that casings are metal, of ample strength to withstand handling and driving stresses and the pressure of concrete and of the surrounding earth materials, and that they are smooth and water tight. Ensure that the inside diameter of casing is not less than the specified size of shaft except as provided below. The Department will not allow extra compensation for concrete required to fill an oversize casing or oversize excavation.

The Engineer will allow the Contractor to supply casing with an outside diameter equal to the specified shaft diameter (O.D. casing) provided additional shaft length is supplied at the shaft tip. Determine the additional length of shaft required by the following relationship:

$$\text{Additional Length} = \frac{(D_1 - D_2)L}{D_2}$$

where:

$D_1$  = casing inside diameter specified = shaft diameter specified

$D_2$  = casing inside diameter provided ( $D_2 = D_1$  minus twice the wall thickness).

$L$  = authorized shaft length below ground for temporary casing methods or below casing for permanent casing methods.

Bear all costs relating to this additional length including but not limited to the cost of extra excavation, extra concrete, and extra reinforcing steel.

Install and remove casing by rotating, exerting downward pressure, or with a vibratory hammer, unless otherwise shown in the Contract Documents. Remove all casings from shaft excavations except those used for the Permanent Casing Method. Ensure that the portion of casings installed under the Permanent Casing Method of construction below the shaft cut-off elevation remains in position as a permanent part of the drilled shaft. When casings that are to be removed become bound in the shaft excavation and cannot be practically removed, submit a proposed redesign to the Engineer for review and acceptance.

If temporary casing is advanced deeper than the minimum top of rock socket elevation shown in the Plans or actual top of rock elevation if deeper, withdraw the casing from the rock socket and overream the shaft. If the temporary casing cannot be withdrawn from the rock socket before final cleaning, extend the length of rock socket below the authorized tip elevation one-half of the distance between the minimum top of rock socket elevation or actual elevation if deeper, and the temporary casing tip elevation.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

Form drilled shafts extending through a body of water with permanent casings. When the shaft extends above ground or a body of water, the Contractor may form the exposed portion with removable casing, unless otherwise specified in the Plans. Remove the portion of metal casings between an elevation 2 feet below the lowest water elevation or 2 feet below ground whichever is higher and the top of shaft elevation after the concrete is cured. Remove casings to expose the concrete as required above in a manner which will not damage the drilled shaft concrete. Dismantle removable casings in accordance with the provisions of 455-17.5.

When practical, do not start the removal until completing all concrete placement in the shaft. Extract casing at a slow, uniform rate with the pull in line with the axis of the shaft. Withdraw temporary casings while the concrete remains fluid.

When conditions warrant, the Contractor may pull the casing in partial stages. Maintain a sufficient head of concrete above the bottom of the casing to overcome the hydrostatic pressure of water outside the casing. At all times maintain the elevation of the concrete in the casing high enough to displace the drilling slurry between the outside of the casing and the edge of the hole while removing the casing.

Expandable or split casings that are removable are not permitted for use below water.

#### **455-15.8 Slurry and Fluid in Excavation:**

**455-15.8.1 General:** Thoroughly premix the slurry in a mixing tank with clean fresh water prior to introduction into the shaft excavation. Introduce slurry before the excavation advances below the bottom of the casing. Ensure that the percentage of polymer or mineral admixture used to make the suspension is such as to maintain the stability of the shaft excavation. Provide adequate water or slurry tanks to perform the work in accordance with these Specifications. The Engineer will not allow excavated pits on projects requiring slurry tanks without the written permission of the Engineer. Take the steps necessary to prevent the slurry from “setting up” in the shaft, including but not limited to agitation, circulation, and adjusting the composition and properties of the slurry. Provide suitable offsite disposal areas and dispose of all waste slurry in a manner meeting all requirements pertaining to pollution.

For shafts to support sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures, polymer slurry may be mixed in the casing portion, in accordance with the APL approved instructions if the following conditions are met:

1. Contractor tests and verifies the polymer slurry meets the property requirements of 455-15.8.3, before continuing the excavation below the casing.
2. Polymer mix continues to be added as required below the bottom of the casing, to maintain the slurry properties during the excavation within compliance of 455-15.8.3.
3. Slurry sampling and testing is performed at intervals not exceeding one hour, in the middle of the excavation depth at the time of testing to verify the properties are maintained within compliance throughout the excavation.
4. If failing to demonstrate the properties are maintained within compliance of 455-15.8.3, discontinue this mixing method and use a slurry pre-mixed in a tank.

Provide a CTQP qualified drilled shaft inspector to perform control tests using suitable apparatus on the slurry mixture to determine the slurry and fluid properties as specified in sub-articles 455-15.8.2 to 455-15.8.4.

Measure the viscosity of the freshly mixed slurry regularly as a check on the quality of the slurry being formed using an approved measuring device.

Perform tests from the fluid in the excavation to determine density, viscosity, and pH value to establish a consistent working pattern, taking into account the mixing process and

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

blending of freshly mixed slurry and previously used slurry. Repeat tests to determine density, viscosity, and pH value at intervals not exceeding 2 hours during the first 8 hours slurry is in use and every 4 hours thereafter, including overnight, until concrete placement. Perform density, viscosity and pH tests again when the excavation reaches the midpoint. When the contractor operations require the shaft excavation to be interrupted and performed in multiple shifts, the continuous testing may be waived if the excavation at the time of suspension of the operations is not deeper than the bottom of the casing provided.

For shafts to support sign, signal, lighting, and ITS structures up to 5 ft diameter and up to 40 ft in depth, when the contractor operations require the shaft to be constructed in multiple shifts, the continuous testing may be waived if the excavation at the time of operations suspension is not deeper than the bottom of the casing provided, or if all the conditions below are met:

1. The shaft location does not pose a safety risk to the public, adjacent lane, utility pole, or any structure, if the excavation fails.
2. Slurry testing is performed at the time of suspending operations and at a time not exceeding 12 hours after that or at the time the operations resume whichever comes first. Testing shall be performed at intervals not exceeding 2 hours for the first 8 hours after resuming operations and every 4 hours thereafter.
3. Slurry testing shall be performed on at least two samples each time, one sample approximately three feet from the bottom and one sample from the middle of the excavation depth at the time the operations were suspended. The results must indicate the polymer slurry meets the viscosity requirements of 455-15.8.3. If this requirement is not met, do not continue without testing for more than 4 hours including the time periods between shifts.
4. The contractor performs soundings of the fluid level, at intervals of 15 minutes or longer, that demonstrate the fluid level is stable over two consecutive soundings.
5. If when resuming operations, slurry does not meet density, pH, or both, adjust the slurry to meet all property requirements of 455-15.8.3. Re-test slurry to verify properties meet the requirements, before resuming operations. Continue testing the slurry every 4 hours after resuming operations until completion of the excavation.

The Department may perform comparison tests as determined necessary during the mineral and polymer slurry operations.

If, at any time in the opinion of the Engineer, the wet construction method fails to stabilize the excavation discontinue this method of construction, backfill the excavation and submit modifications in procedure or alternate means of construction for approval.

**455-15.8.2 Mineral Slurry:** When mineral slurry is used in an excavation, use only processed attapulgate or bentonite clays with up to 2% (by dry weight) of added polymer. Use mineral slurry having a mineral grain size such that it will remain in suspension and having viscosity and gel characteristics to transport excavated material to a screening system. Use a percentage and specific gravity of the material to make a suspension able to maintain the stability of the excavation and to allow proper placement of concrete. Ensure that the material used to make the slurry is not detrimental to concrete or surrounding ground strata. During construction, maintain the level of the slurry at a height sufficient to prevent caving of the hole. In the event of a sudden significant loss of slurry such that the slurry level cannot be maintained by adding slurry to the hole, backfill the excavation and delay the construction of that foundation until an alternate construction procedure has been approved.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

Perform the following tests on the mineral slurry supplied to and in the shaft excavation and ensure that the results are within the ranges stated in the table below:

Table 455-2		
Item to be measured	Range of Results at 68°F fluid temperature	Test Method
Density	64 to 73 lb/ft <sup>3</sup> (in fresh water environment) 66 to 75 lb/ft <sup>3</sup> (in salt water environment)	Mud density balance: FM 8-RP13B-1
Viscosity	30 to 40 seconds	Marsh Cone Method: FM 8-RP13B-2
pH	8 to 11	Electric pH meter or pH indicator paper strips: FM 8-RP13B-4
Sand Content	4% or less	FM 8-RP13B-3

The Contractor may adjust the limits in the above table when field conditions warrant as successfully demonstrated in a test hole or with other methods approved by the Engineer. The Engineer must approve all changes in writing before the Contractor can continue to use them.

During construction, maintain the level of mineral slurry in the shaft excavation within the excavation and at a level not less than 4 feet above the highest expected piezometric water elevation along the depth of a shaft.

**455-15.8.3 Polymer Slurry:** A representative of the manufacturer must be on-site or available for immediate contact to assist and guide the construction of the first three drilled shafts at no additional cost to the Department. This representative must also be available for on-site assistance or immediate contact if problems are encountered during the construction of the remaining drilled shafts. Use polymer slurry only if the soils below the casing are not classified as organic, and the pH of the fluid in the hole can be maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Perform the following tests on the polymer slurry supplied to and in the shaft excavation and ensure that the results are maintained within the ranges stated in the table below:



Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

Table 455-3 Mixed Polymer Slurry Properties		
Item to be measured	Range of Results at 68°F fluid temperature	Test Method
Density	62 to 65 lb/ft <sup>3</sup> (fresh water) 64 to 67 lb/ft <sup>3</sup> (salt water)	Mud density balance: FM 8-RP13B-1
Viscosity: for bridges and main structure foundations	50 seconds to upper limit defined by the APL	Marsh Cone Method: FM 8-RP13B-2
Viscosity: for miscellaneous structure foundations	50 seconds to upper limit recommended by the manufacturer based on soil type	March Cone Method: FM 8-RP13B-2
pH	Range published by the manufacturer for materials excavated	Electric pH meter or pH indicator paper strips: FM 8-RP13B-4
Sand Content	0.5% or less	FM 8-RP13B-3

Premix polymer slurry in accordance with the manufacturer's published procedures. Do not mix in the excavation as a means to prepare slurry. When approved by the GFDEOR, adjustments to slurry properties can be made in the excavation.

During construction, maintain the level of the slurry at a height sufficient to prevent caving of the hole and which should not be lower than 4 feet above the highest expected piezometric water elevation along the depth of the shaft.

Ensure the method of disposal meets the requirements of local authorities.

**455-15.8.4 Fluid in Excavation at Time of Concrete Placement:** When any fluid is present in any drilled shaft excavation, including shafts to support sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures, the applicable test methods and reporting requirements described in 455-15.8.1, 455-15.8.2 and 455-15.8.3 apply to tests of fluid in the shaft prior to placing the concrete.

When mineral slurries are used, ensure the properties at the time of concrete placement are within the acceptable ranges indicated in 455-15.8.2. When polymer slurries are used ensure the properties of the polymer slurry are within the following acceptable ranges at the time of concrete placement:

Table 455-4 Polymer Slurry Properties at Time of Concrete Placement		
Item to be measured	Range of Results at 68°F fluid temperature	Test Method
Density	62 to 65 lb/ft <sup>3</sup> (fresh water) 64 to 67 lb/ft <sup>3</sup> (salt water)	Mud density balance: FM 8-RP13B-1
Viscosity	50 seconds to upper limit defined by the APL	Marsh Cone Method: FM 8-RP13B-2

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

Table 455-4 Polymer Slurry Properties at Time of Concrete Placement		
Item to be measured	Range of Results at 68°F fluid temperature	Test Method
pH	Range published by the manufacturer for materials excavated	Electric pH meter or pH indicator paper strips: FM 8-RP13B-4
Sand Content	0.5% or less	FM 8-RP13B-3

Test samples of the fluid in the shaft from within 1 inch of the base of the shaft and from the middle of the shaft height for shafts up to 60 feet in depth. Test samples of the fluid in the shaft from within 1 inch of the base of the shaft and at intervals not exceeding 30 feet up the shaft for shafts deeper than 60 feet. Use a sampling tool designed to sample over a depth range of 12 inches or less. Take whatever action is necessary prior to placing the concrete to bring the fluid within the specification and reporting requirements, outlined in the tables in 455-15.8.2 and 455-15.8.3, except as follows:

The Engineer will not require tests for pH or viscosity, nor require the fluid to meet the minimum density specified in 455-15.8.2 and 455-15.8.3 when neither polymer nor mineral slurry has been introduced into the shaft excavation.

#### **455-15.9 Tremies and Pumps:**

**455-15.9.1 General:** The requirements of the applicable provisions of Section 400 will apply when using a tremie or a pump to place drilled shaft concrete.

**455-15.9.2 Dry Excavations:** Ensure that the tremie for depositing concrete in a dry drilled shaft excavation consists of a tube of solid construction, a tube constructed of sections which can be added and removed, or a tube of other accepted design. The Contractor may pass concrete through a hopper at the top of the tube or through side openings as the tremie is retrieved during concrete placement. Support the tremie so that the free fall of the concrete is less than 5 feet at all times. If the free falling concrete causes the shaft excavation to cave or slough, control the movement of concrete by reducing the height of free fall of the concrete and/or reducing the rate of flow of concrete into the excavation.

**455-15.9.3 Wet Excavations:** Construct the tremie or pump line used to deposit concrete beneath the surface of water so that it is water-tight and will readily discharge concrete. Construct the discharge end of the tremie or pump line to prevent water intrusion and permit the free flow of concrete during placement operations. Ensure that the tremie or pump line has sufficient length and weight to rest on the shaft bottom before starting concrete placement.

During placement operations, ensure that the discharge end of the tremie or pump line is within 6 inches of the bottom of the shaft excavation until at least 10 feet of concrete has been placed. Ensure the discharge end of the tremie or pump line is continuously embedded at least 10 feet into the concrete after 10 feet of concrete has been placed and until the casing is overpoured sufficiently to eliminate all contaminated concrete. Ensure that the free fall of concrete into the hopper is less than 5 feet at all times. Support the tremie so that it can be raised to increase the discharge of concrete and lowered to reduce the discharge of concrete. Do not rapidly raise or lower the tremie to increase the discharge of the concrete. Maintain a continuous flow of concrete and a positive pressure differential of the concrete in the tremie or pump line at all times to prevent water or slurry intrusion into the shaft concrete.

#### **455-15.10 Excavation and Drilling Equipment:**

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

**455-15.10.1 General:** All shaft excavation is unclassified shaft excavation. Overream the drilled shaft sidewall when necessary. These terms are defined in 455-15.10.2, 455-15.10.3, and 455-15.10.4, respectively.

Use excavation and drilling equipment having adequate capacity, including power, torque, and crowd (downthrust), and excavation and overreaming tools of adequate design, size, and strength to perform the work shown in the Plans or described herein. When the material encountered cannot be drilled using conventional earth augers and/or underreaming tools, provide special drilling equipment, including but not limited to rock augers, core barrels, rock tools, air tools, blasting materials, and other equipment as necessary to continue the shaft excavation to the size and depth required. In the event blasting is necessary, obtain all necessary permits. The Contractor is responsible for the effects of blasting on already completed work and adjacent structures. The Engineer must approve all blasting.

**455-15.10.2 Unclassified Shaft Excavation:** Unclassified shaft excavation is defined as all processes required to excavate a drilled shaft of the dimensions shown in the Contract Documents to the depth indicated in the Plans plus 15 feet or plus 3 shaft diameters, whichever is deeper, completed and accepted. Include in the work all shaft excavation, whether the material encountered is soil, rock, weathered rock, stone, natural or man-made obstructions, or materials of other descriptions.

**455-15.10.3 Unclassified Extra Depth Excavation:** Unclassified extra depth excavation is defined as all processes required to excavate a drilled shaft of plan dimensions which is deeper than the limits defined as unclassified shaft excavation.

**455-15.10.4 Drilled Shaft Sidewall Overreaming:** Drilled shaft sidewall overreaming is defined as the unclassified excavation required to roughen its surface or to enlarge the drilled shaft diameter due to softening of the sidewalls or to remove excessive buildup of slurry cake when slurry is used. Increase the shaft radius a minimum of 1/2 inch and a maximum of 3 inches by overreaming. The Contractor may accomplish overreaming with a grooving tool, overreaming bucket, or other suitable equipment.

Meet the limit for depth of sidewall overreaming into the shaft sidewall material and the elevation limits between which sidewall overreaming is required.

#### **455-15.11 Inspection of Excavations:**

**455-15.11.1 Dimensions and Alignment:** Provide equipment for checking the dimensions and alignment of each permanent shaft excavation. Determine the dimensions and alignment of the shaft excavation under the observation and direction of the Department. Generally, check the alignment and dimensions by any of the following methods as necessary:

1. Check the dimensions and alignment of dry shaft excavations using reference stakes and a plumb bob. Verify that the bottom of the hole is level.
2. Check the dimensions and alignment of casing when inserted in the excavation.

3. Use an acceptable caliper system
4. Insert any casing, rod or pipe assembly, or other device used to check dimensions and alignment into the excavation to full depth.

**455-15.11.2 Depth:** Generally, reference the depth of the shaft during drilling to appropriate marks on the Kelly bar or other suitable methods. Measure final shaft depths with a suitable weighted tape or other accepted methods after final cleaning.

**455-15.11.3 Shaft Inspection Device (SID):** Furnish all power and equipment necessary to inspect the bottom conditions of a drilled shaft excavation for bridge foundations

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

and to measure the thickness of bottom sediment or any other debris using a SID. Provide a means to position and lower the SID into the shaft excavation to enable the bell housing to rest vertically on the bottom of the excavation. Continuously videotape the inspection of each drilled shaft excavation after final cleaning. Clearly identify in the recordings by audio or other means, the location and items being observed.

Furnish a SID meeting the following requirements:

1. A remotely operated, high resolution, color video camera sealed inside a watertight bell housing.
2. Provides a clear view of the bottom inspection on a video monitor at the surface in real time.
3. Provides a permanent record of the entire inspection with voice annotation on a quality DVD with a resolution of not less than 720 x 480.
4. Provides a minimum field of vision of 110 square inches, with at least two graduated measuring devices to record the depth of sediment on the bottom of the shaft excavation to a minimum accuracy of 1/2 inch and a length greater than 1-1/2 inches.
5. Provides sufficient lighting to illuminate the entire field of vision at the bottom of the shaft in order for the operator and inspector to clearly see the depth measurement scale on the video monitor and to produce a clear recording of the inspection.
6. Provides a regulated compressed air or gas system to precisely adjust the drilling fluid level within the bell housing, and a pressurized water system to assist in determination of bottom sedimentation depth

Obtain the Engineer's approval of the device in advance of the first inspection contingent on satisfactory field performance. Notify the Engineer for approval before a different device is used for any subsequent inspection.

**455-15.11.4 Shaft Cleanliness Requirements:** Adjust cleaning operations so a minimum of 50% of the bottom of each shaft will have less than 1/2 inches of sediment at the time of placement of the concrete. Ensure the maximum depth of sedimentary deposits or any other debris at any place on the bottom of the shaft excavation does not exceed 1-1/2 inches. Determine shaft cleanliness by visual inspection for dry shafts. For bridge foundations, use a shaft inspection device for wet shafts. For drilled shaft foundations for sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures the use of a weighted tape is permitted to verify level and clean hole bottom conditions at the time of concrete placement.

When using slurry, meet the requirements of 455-15.8 at the time of concrete placement.

**455-15.11.4.1 Exceptions for Shafts for Sign, Signal, Lighting and ITS Structures:** Ensure the depth of sedimentary deposits or other debris does not exceed 1 inch over the bottom of the shaft when installing drilled shafts to support sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures.

**455-15.11.5 Time of Excavation:** Overream the sidewalls of any unclassified excavation work using mineral slurry lasting more than 36 hours (measured from the beginning of excavation for all methods except the Temporary or Permanent Casing Method, which begins at the time excavation begins below the casing) before placement of the concrete. Ensure that the minimum depth of overreaming the shaft sidewall is 1/2 inch and the maximum depth is 3 inches. Provide any overreaming required at no expense to the Department when exceeding the 36-hour limit.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

When using mineral slurry, adjust excavation operations so that the maximum time that slurry is in contact with the bottom 5 feet of the shaft (from time of drilling to concreting) does not exceed 12 hours. If exceeding the 12-hour time limit, overream the shaft socket or the full shaft when socket is not specified, at no additional expense to the Department prior to performing other operations in the shaft.

#### **455-16 Reinforcing Steel Construction and Placement.**

**455-16.1 Cage Construction and Placement:** Completely assemble and place as a unit the cage of reinforcing steel, consisting of longitudinal bars, ties, and cage stiffener bars, immediately after the Drilled Shaft Inspector inspects accepts the shaft excavation and immediately prior to placing concrete. Tie all intersections of drilled shaft reinforcing steel with cross ties or “figure 8” ties. Use double strand ties, ties with larger tie wire, U-bolts, or similar when necessary.

**455-16.2 Splicing Cage:** If the bottom of the constructed shaft elevation is lower than the bottom of the shaft elevation in the Plans, extend a minimum of one half of the longitudinal bars required in the upper portion of the shaft the additional length. Continue the tie bars for the extra depth, spaced on 2-foot centers, and extend the stiffener bars to the final depth. The Contractor may lap splice these bars or use unspliced bars of the proper length. Do not weld bars to the planned reinforcing steel unless shown in the Contract Documents.

For drilled shafts supporting sign, signal, lighting, and ITS structures, if the shaft cleaning operations result in excavating below the required tip elevation, the reinforcing steel cage does not need to be extended. The reinforcing steel cage may be spliced to rest on the bottom of the excavation or suspended in place from the top.

**455-16.3 Support, Alignment, and Tolerance:** Tie and support the reinforcing steel in the shaft so that the reinforcing steel will remain within allowable tolerances as specified in 455-20 and Section 415.

Ensure concentric spacing for the entire length of the cage. As a minimum, use centering devices consisting of wheels or other approved noncorrosive spacing devices within 3 feet of the bottom, within 6 feet of the top, and intervals not exceeding 10 feet along the cage length. Do not use block or wire type spacers. Ensure no permanent metallic elements will be within the concrete cover space. Use a minimum of one spacer per 30 inches of circumference of cage with a minimum of four at each level. Provide spacers at the bottom of the drilled shaft reinforcing cage as required to maintain the proper position of the cage.

For shafts to support sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures, when a casing with an inside diameter (I.D.) larger than the required shaft diameter is used, provide, within the portion of the oversized casing, centering devices specially dimensioned or other means to ensure the shaft, the cage and the upright are concentric. Provide spacers within 3 feet of the bottom and at intervals not exceeding 10 feet along the reinforcement, with a minimum of two levels of spacers below the bottom of the casing.

Check the elevation of the top of the steel cage before and after placing the concrete. If the cage is not within the specified tolerances, correct, and submit a revised DSIP to the Engineer for approval. Do not construct additional shafts until receiving approval from the Engineer.

**455-16.4 Nondestructive Integrity Testing Access Tubes:** Install access tubes full length in all drilled shafts from the tip of shaft to a point high enough above top of shaft to allow Thermal Integrity Testing for Drilled Shafts (TITDS) and Cross-Hole Sonic Logging (CSL)

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

testing, but not less than 30 inches above the top of the drilled shaft, ground surface or water surface, whichever is higher. Equally space tubes around circumference of drilled shaft. Securely tie access tubes to the inside of the reinforcing cage and align tubes to be parallel to the vertical axis of the center of the cage. Access tubes from the top of the reinforcing cage to the tip of the shaft shall be NPS 1-1/2 Schedule 40 black iron or black steel (not galvanized) pipe. Access tubes above the top of the reinforcing cage may be the same black iron or black steel pipe or Schedule 40 PVC pipe. Ensure that the access tubes are free from loose rust, scale, dirt, paint, oil and other foreign material. Couple tubes as required with threaded couplers, such that inside of tube remains flush. Seal the bottom and top of the tubes with threaded caps. The tubes, joints and bottom caps shall be watertight. Seal the top of the tubes with lubricated, threaded caps sufficient to prevent the intrusion of foreign materials. Stiffen the cage sufficiently to prevent damage or misalignment of access tubes during the lifting and installation of the cage. Exercise care in removing the caps from the top of the tubes after installation so as not to apply excess torque, hammering or other stress which could break the bond between the tubes and the concrete.

Provide the following number (rounded up to the next whole number of tubes) and configuration of access tubes in each drilled shaft based on the diameter of the shaft.

Shaft Diameter	Number of Tubes Required	Configuration around the inside of Circular Reinforcing Cage
36 to 48 inches	4	90 degrees apart
Greater than 48 inches	1 tube per foot of Shaft Diameter	360 degrees divided by the Number of Tubes

Insert simulated or mock probes in each access tube prior to concreting to ensure the serviceability of the tube. Fill access tubes with clean potable water and recap prior to concreting. Repair or replace any leaking, misaligned or unserviceable tubes as in a manner acceptable to the Engineer prior to concreting.

For method shafts for bridge foundations, in addition to the access tubes, provide embedded thermal wires equally spaced around the reinforcing cage.

For drilled shaft foundations requiring anchor bolts, verify access tubes will not interfere with anchor bolt installation before excavating the shaft. When access tube locations conflict with anchor bolt locations, move the access tube location plus or minus 2 inches along the inner circumference of the reinforcing cage.

For drilled shafts supporting sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures, if the shaft cleaning operations result in excavating below the required tip elevation, the access tubes do not need to be extended. If the reinforcing steel cage is suspended in place from the top rather than resting on the bottom of the excavation, clearly mark the top of shaft location on each tube.

When called for in the Contract Documents, provide embedded thermal wires and equipment to allow TITDS in accordance with ASTM D7949 Method B.

#### **455-17 Concrete Placement.**

**455-17.1 General:** Place concrete in accordance with the applicable portions of Sections 346 and 400, 455-15.2, 455-15.3, 455-15.4, 455-15.5, 455-15.8, 455-15.9, and the requirements herein.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

Place concrete as soon as possible after completing all excavation, cleaning the shaft excavation, inspecting and finding it satisfactory, and immediately after placing reinforcing steel. Continuously place concrete in the shaft to the top of the casing. Continue placing concrete after the casing is full until good quality concrete is evident at the top of the casing. Place concrete through a tremie or concrete pump using accepted methods. After the shaft is overpoured sufficiently to eliminate all contaminated concrete, additional concrete may be added to the shaft without the use of a tremie or pump in accordance with Section 400.

If the pressure head is lost during concrete placement for any reason, perform integrity testing at no expense to the Department.

Immediately after concreting, check the water levels in the CSL access tubes and refill as necessary. If tubes become unserviceable, core new holes in the drilled shaft as directed by the Engineer.

**455-17.2 Placement Time Requirements:** The elapsed time for placing drilled shaft concrete includes the concrete mixing and transit time, the concrete placement time, the time required to remove any temporary casing that causes or could cause the concrete to flow into the space previously occupied by the casing, and the time to insert any required column steel, bolts, weldments, etc. The elapsed time begins at the time the first truck load placed in the shaft is batched. Maintain a minimum slump of 5 inches throughout the elapsed time. Use materials to produce and maintain the required slump through the elapsed time that meets the class of concrete specified. Provide slump loss tests that demonstrate to the Engineer that the concrete will maintain a 5 inch or greater slump for the anticipated elapsed time before beginning drilled shaft construction.

**455-17.3 Forms:** When the top of shaft elevation is above ground or above water, form the portion of the shaft above ground and the portion of the shaft above water with a removable form or another suitable method to the dimensions shown in the Plans.

When the shaft extends above the ground through a body of water, the Contractor may form the portion through the water with removable forms except when the Permanent Casing Method is specified.

**455-17.4 Riser Blocks:** The Contractor may cast a riser block of equal diameter as the column and of a maximum height of 6 inches at the top of the completed shaft. When this option is chosen, extend any dowel steel above the top of shaft an additional 6 inches.

**455-17.5 Curing:** Cure the top surface in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section 400 and construct any construction joint area as shown in the Plans. Protect portions of drilled shafts exposed to a body of water from the action of water by leaving the forms in place for a minimum of seven days after casting the concrete. The Contractor may remove forms prior to seven days provided the concrete strength has reached 2,500 psi or greater as evidenced by cylinder breaks.

**455-17.6 Non-Destructive Testing of Drilled Shaft Integrity:**

**455-17.6.1 Thermal Integrity Testing for Drilled Shafts (TITDS):** Perform all TITDS testing in accordance with ASTM D7949. Test method shafts, load test shafts and all drilled shafts in bridge bents or piers considered nonredundant in the Plans, using TITDS. For all other drilled shafts supporting bridges and sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures, perform TITDS on any shaft suspected of containing defects. The Engineer may select shafts for TITDS based on observations in the field or the review of the drilled shaft logs.

Engage a qualified Specialty Engineer to supervise the TITDS. The qualified TITDS Specialty Engineer must have a minimum six-month experience of TITDS and

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

have a Florida Licensed Professional Engineer and supervise the collection and interpretation of data. The individual performing the TITDS in the field must work for the Specialty Engineer firm and have a minimum of six months experience of TITDS. The Contractor shall provide all necessary access and assistance to the TITDS Specialty Engineer to satisfactorily perform the testing.

After acceptance of production shafts by the Engineer, remove all water from the access tubes or core holes and fill the tubes or core holes with a structural non-shrink grout meeting the requirements of Section 934 from the bottom via tremie tube. Place the grout utilizing enough pressure to fill the tubes or core holes completely.

If the Contractor determines at any time during the non-destructive testing and evaluation of the drilled shaft that the drilled shaft should be replaced, no further testing or evaluation of that shaft is required.

**455-17.6.1.1 Equipment:** Furnish TITDS test equipment in accordance with ASTM D7949 as follows:

1. Provide thermal probes with four orthogonally oriented infrared sensors able to be used in 1.5 inch I.D. pipes.
2. Provide a computer based TITDS data acquisition system for display of signals during data acquisition.
3. Provide a computer based TITDS data acquisition system for display of signals during data acquisition.
4. Provide an air compressor and power supply with sufficient pressure to air lift the water from the access tubes.

**455-17.6.1.2 Procedure:** For non-bridge structures, perform TITDS testing between the minimum and maximum times shown below after the batching time of the first truck load placed in the drilled shaft, unless otherwise accepted by the Engineer.

Table 455-6		
Shaft Diameter (inches)	Minimum time (hours)	Maximum time (hours)
36-48	24	54
49-60	24	72
61-72	24	72
73-84	24	90
85-120	24	108

The Contractor may propose modifications in the above table for site specific and special concrete mix conditions, as demonstrated from lab and field testing and instrumentation. The Engineer must approve all changes to the testing times prior to the Contractor using them.

For bridges, prior to production drilled shaft and load test drilled shaft installation, perform TITDS in accordance with ASTM D7949 Method B to determine the temperature variability and time to peak temperature for each project specific concrete mix. Obtain temperature measurements at least every 15 minutes during curing on the method shafts piles. Submit the TITDS results within three working days of performing the tests, in accordance with 455-17, including the proposed temperature peak time established from the TITDS. The Engineer will review the results of the test and concur with the proposed peak time or revise it. After the peak time is established for each mix, perform TITDS in accordance with



Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

ASTM D7949 Method A on production drilled shafts and load test shafts, within the following times after batching the first truck:

$$\text{Minimum time (hours)} = \text{Peak time (hours)} - 8$$

$$\text{Maximum time (hours)} = \text{Peak time (hours)} + 4D$$

Where:

D= Drilled shaft diameter in ft.

Peak time: Time after batching the first truck load that was placed in the drilled shaft, at which the maximum temperature is observed.

Furnish information regarding the shaft, tube lengths and depths, construction dates, and other pertinent shaft installation observations and details to the Department at the time of testing. Verify access tube lengths and their condition in the presence of the Department, at the end of concrete placement. If the access tubes do not provide access over the full length of the shaft, repair the existing tube(s) or core additional hole(s), as directed by the Engineer, at no additional cost to the Department.

Just prior to inserting the thermal probe, remove water from the access tubes. Store the removed water in an insulated container for later replacement. Allow the thermal probe to acclimate in accordance with the equipment manufacturer recommendations. Continuously record temperatures at depth intervals of 3.0 inches or less from the top to the bottom of each access tube. Repeat the test at each access tube until two sets of data from the same access tube provide similar results. Return the warm water to the access tubes immediately after the testing has been completed.

Immediately report any potential defects indicated by lower temperature anomalies to the Engineer.

**455-17.6.1.3 Required TITDS Reports:** Submit the TITDS data and analysis to the Engineer in a signed and sealed report, together with all electronic data, within 48 hours of testing. The report shall include as minimum the following items:

1. Graphs displaying all temperature measurements and average temperature versus depth.
2. Indication of unusual temperatures, including cooler local deviations from the average at any depth from the overall average over the entire length.
3. A graph displaying the average temperature and theoretical temperature versus depth.
4. Variations in temperature between access tubes which may indicate variations in cage alignment.
5. When ASTM D7949 method B is used, include a chart indicating the variability of temperature vs. time, for all wires and the average. Submit the peak time in hours for the average temperature of the wires.
6. The calculated radius of the shaft throughout the entire depth.
7. Calculated concrete cover throughout the entire depth.
8. Shaft Details, Probe Details, Environmental Details, Tube Run Selection and Shaft Adjustment Data that show the measurements, inputs and adjustments to the data. Screen captures of these pages from the "TIP Reporter" software will be acceptable.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

9. A conclusion stating whether the tested shaft is free from integrity defects, meets the minimum concrete cover and diameter requirements by the specifications and the cage is properly aligned. When anomalies are detected, include in the report a three-dimensional rendering of the shape of the shaft.

**455-17.6.1.4 Evaluation of TITDS Test Results:** Drilled shafts not meeting the minimum cover and diameter requirements, or having integrity defects, are not acceptable without an engineering analysis.

**455-17.6.1.5 Coring and/or Repair of Drilled Shafts:** If a drilled shaft is unacceptable based on the TITDS tests and other testing, or problems observed during drilled shaft construction, core the shaft to allow further evaluation and repair, or replace the shaft. If coring to allow further evaluation of the shaft and repair is chosen, one or more core samples shall be taken from each unacceptable shaft for full depth of the shaft or to the depth directed by the GFDEOR. The GFDEOR shall determine, with concurrence of the Engineer, the number, location, and diameter of the cores based on the results of the TITDS. Keep an accurate log of cores. Properly mark and place the cores in a crate showing the shaft depth at each interval of core recovery. Deliver the cores to the GFDEOR and submit the coring log to the Engineer. Perform strength testing by an AASHTO certified lab on portions of the cores that exhibit questionable concrete as determined by the GFDEOR. If the TITDS and coring indicate the shaft is defective, propose remedial measures for approval by the Engineer. Such improvement may consist of, but is not limited to correcting defective portions of the shaft, providing straddle shafts to compensate for capacity loss, or providing a replacement shaft. Repair all detected defects and conduct post repair integrity testing using horizontal and offset CSL testing and 3-D tomographic imaging as described in 455-17.6.2. Engage a Specialty Engineer to perform gamma-gamma density logging calibrated to 1-1/2 inch black iron access tubes, prior to and after the repair is performed, to verify the integrity of the shaft outside the reinforcing cage in the same locations where the repair was required. When straddle shafts or replacement shafts are used to correct a deficient foundation perform TITDS in accordance with 455-17.6.1 through 455-17.6.3 to verify integrity of these shafts. Submit all results to the Engineer within five days of test completion for acceptance. Perform all work described in this sub-article at no additional cost to the Department, and with no increase in Contract Time.

**455-17.6.2 Cross Sonic Logging (CSL) and Tomography:** When required by the Engineer perform CSL testing in accordance with ASTM D6760. Engage a qualified Specialty Engineer to perform the CSL testing. The qualified CSL Specialty Engineer must be a Professional Engineer in the State of Florida and have a minimum six-month experience of CSL testing, supervising the collection of CSL data and interpretation of CSL results. The individual performing the CSL testing in the field must work for the Specialty Engineer firm and have a minimum of six months experience of six months of CSL testing. The Contractor shall provide all necessary access and assistance to the CSL Specialty Engineer to satisfactorily perform the testing.

When a shaft contains four tubes, test every possible tube combination. For shafts with five or more tubes, test all pairs of adjacent tubes around the perimeter, and one-half of the remaining number of tube combinations, as chosen by the Engineer. Pull the probes simultaneously, starting from the bottoms of the tubes, over an electronic depth measuring device. Perform the CSL tests with the source and receiver probes in the same horizontal plane. Continuously record CSL signals at depth intervals of 2-1/2 inches or less from the bottom of the tubes to the top of each shaft. Remove all slack from the cables prior to pulling to provide

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

accurate depth measurements in the CSL records. When the measurements indicate a 30% or greater reduction in velocity between one or more pairs take one or two concrete cores to allow further evaluation and repair, or replace the shaft as directed by the Engineer. Determine the location of the concrete cores by performing 3D tomographic analysis using the CSL measurements. The core depths shall be at least 5 feet deeper than the bottom of the anomaly determined by the 3D tomography analysis or full depth if the anomaly is within 5 feet of the bottom of the shaft. The Engineer may accept a drilled shaft without rock cores if an EAR demonstrates that the anomaly does not affect the structural and the geotechnical axial capacity, the structural and geotechnical lateral stability, the settlement behavior of the shaft, and that the anomaly will not impact the durability of the foundation.

When repairs are done, perform CSL measurements in all tube pair combinations with the source and receiver running at the same horizontal plane and at the vertical offsets of 45 degrees above and below. Perform all measurements including the offset measurements from the point where the higher probe is at least 5 feet below the lower limit of the repaired zone to the point where the lower probe is at least 5 feet above the upper limit of the repaired zone. Offset measurements must be as follows: plus 45 degrees (source below receiver) and minus 45 degrees (source above receiver). Use the measurements of these two offsets in combination with the horizontal measurements to perform the 3D tomography. Provide the CSL measurements, CSL logs and 3D tomographic analysis at no additional cost to the Department.

After acceptance of production shafts by the Engineer, fill the tubes or core holes with a structural non-shrink grout in accordance with 455-17.6.1.

If the Contractor determines at any time during the non-destructive testing and evaluation of the drilled shaft that the drilled shaft should be replaced, no further testing or evaluation of that shaft is required.

**455-17.6.2.1 Required CSL Reports:** Present the CSL data and analysis results to the Engineer in a signed and sealed report. Include CSL logs with analyses of first pulse arrival time (FAT) versus depth and pulse energy/amplitude versus depth. Present a CSL log for each tube pair tested with any defect zones identified on the logs and discussed in the test report as appropriate. When offset measurements are required, perform 3D tomographic analysis using all offset data, and include color coded 3D tomographic images in the report.

**455-17.6.2.2 Evaluation of Cross-Hole Sonic Logging Testing:** Drilled shafts with velocity reduction exceeding 30% are not acceptable without an engineering analysis.

**455-17.6.2.3 Coring and/or Repair of Drilled Shafts:** If a drilled shaft is unacceptable based on the CSL Testing and tomographic analyses and other testing, core the shaft to allow further evaluation and repair, or replace the shaft in accordance with 455-17.6.1.5.

If repairs are performed or additional shafts installed to correct a deficient foundation, conduct integrity testing and submit the results to the Engineer in accordance with 455-17.6.1.5.

#### **455-18 Method Shafts.**

The Engineer will use the construction of method shafts (test holes) to determine if the methods and equipment used by the Contractor are sufficient to produce a shaft excavation meeting the requirements of the Contract Documents. During method shaft excavations, the Engineer will evaluate the ability to control dimensions and alignment of excavations within tolerances; to seal the casing into impervious materials; to control the size of the excavation under caving conditions by the use of slurry or by other means; to properly clean the completed

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

shaft excavation; to construct excavations in open water areas; to determine the elevation of ground water; to place reinforcing steel and concrete meeting the requirements of these Specifications within the prescribed time frame; and to execute any other necessary construction operation. Revise the methods and equipment as necessary at any time during the construction of the method shaft when unable to satisfactorily carry out any of the necessary operations described above or when unable to control the dimensions and alignment of the shaft excavation within tolerances.

Successfully construct method shafts out of permanent position at the location shown in the Plans. Ensure the diameter and depth of the method shafts are the same diameter and maximum depth as the production drilled shafts. When there are shafts both on land and in water, successfully construct a method shaft for each condition. When there is more than one size of drilled shaft, perform a method shaft for the largest diameter for each condition. Reinforce the method shaft unless otherwise directed in the Contract Documents. Conduct integrity tests on each shaft, using both cross-hole sonic logging and TITDS test methods. Fill the method shaft with concrete in the same manner production drilled shafts will be constructed. Backfill method shafts which are not filled with concrete with suitable soil in a manner satisfactory to the Engineer. Leave concreted method shafts in place, except remove the top of the shaft to a depth of 2 feet below the finished graded surface. Use the same procedure for shafts constructed in water. Restore the disturbed areas at the sites of method shafts drilled out of position as nearly as practical to their original condition. When the Contractor fails to demonstrate to the Engineer the adequacy of his methods or equipment, and alterations are required, make appropriate modifications and provide additional method shafts at no expense to the Department. Make no changes in methods or equipment after initial acceptance without the consent of the Engineer.

A separate method shaft is not required for drilled shafts installed under sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures. The first production shaft will serve as a method shaft for determining acceptability of the installation method.

#### **455-19 Test Bells.**

Test bells are no longer used.

#### **455-20 Construction Tolerances.**

Meet the following construction tolerances for drilled shafts:

1. Ensure that the top of the drilled shaft is no more than 3 inches laterally in the X or Y coordinate from the position indicated in the Plans.
2. Ensure that the vertical alignment of the shaft excavation does not vary from the alignment shown in the Plans by more than 1/4 inches per foot of depth.
3. After placing all the concrete, ensure that the top of the reinforcing steel cage is no more than 6 inches above and no more than 3 inches below plan position.
4. Ensure that the reinforcing cage is concentric with the shaft within a tolerance of 1-1/2 inches. Ensure that concrete cover is a minimum of 4-1/2 inches unless shown otherwise in the Plans.
5. Ensure that the minimum diameter of the drilled shaft is not smaller than the specified diameter minus 1 inch. All casing diameters shown in the Plans refer to I.D. (inside diameter) dimensions. However, the Contractor may use casing with an outside diameter equal to the specified shaft diameter if the extra length described in 455-15.7 is provided. In this case, ensure that the I.D. of the casing is not smaller than the specified shaft diameter minus 1 inch.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

The Contractor may elect to provide a casing larger in diameter than shown in the Plans to facilitate meeting this requirement. When conditions are such that a series of telescoping casings are used, provide the casing sized to maintain the minimum shaft diameters listed above.

6. Except when a butting or encroaching within a sidewalk, ensure that the top elevation of the drilled shaft concrete has a tolerance of plus 1 inch and minus 3 inches from the top of shaft elevation shown in the Plans.

7. When abutting or encroaching within a sidewalk, ensure that the top elevation of the drilled shaft is flush with the sidewalk surface.

8. The dimensions of casings are subject to American Petroleum Institute tolerances applicable to regular steel pipe.

9. Use excavation equipment and methods designed so that the completed shaft excavation will have a flat bottom. Ensure that the cutting edges of excavation equipment are normal to the vertical axis of the equipment within a tolerance of plus or minus 3/8 inches per foot of diameter.

#### **455-21 Drilled Shaft Excavations Constructed out of Tolerance.**

Do not construct drilled shaft excavations in such a manner that the concrete shaft cannot be completed within the required tolerances. The Contractor may make corrections to an unacceptable drilled shaft excavation by any combination of the following methods:

1. Overdrilling the shaft excavation to a larger diameter to permit accurate placement of the reinforcing steel cage with the required minimum concrete cover.

2. Increasing the number and/or size of the steel reinforcement bars.

When the tolerances are not met, the Contractor may propose a redesign to incorporate shafts installed out of tolerance into caps or footings. Incorporate shafts installed out of tolerance at no expense to the Department. Ensure the Contractor's Engineer of Record performs any redesign and signs and seals the redesign drawings and computations. Do not begin any proposed construction until the redesign has been reviewed and accepted by the Engineer.

Backfill any out of tolerance shafts in an accepted manner when necessary until the redesign is complete and accepted. Furnish additional materials and work necessary, including engineering analysis and redesign, to effect corrections of out of tolerance drilled shaft excavations at no expense to the Department.

#### **455-22 Recording, Certification and Verification.**

**455-22.1 Recording:** Inspect and record all the drilled shaft operations. Keep a set of drilled shaft logs for each drilled shaft including test holes, load test shafts and production shafts. Use the Department's Drilled Shaft Log forms to record the information. Submit to the Engineer drilled shaft logs and concrete logs within 24 hours of concrete placement. The documentation shall include the drilled shaft installation procedures, actual dimensions and quantities of the materials used, fluid testing results, bottom cleanliness inspection results, sequencing, as well as any problems encountered during construction and concrete placement. Allow two working days, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, for the Department to review the data and determine whether shafts will be selected for CSL integrity testing. Perform CSL testing on any shaft selected by the Department at this stage in accordance with 455-17.

**455-22.2 Foundation Certification Packages:** Submit certification packages of drilled shaft foundations to the Engineer prior to Verification Testing. Each Foundation Certification Package shall include a letter signed and sealed by the GFDEOR certifying the drilled shafts

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

have the required axial capacity, torsional capacity, uplift capacity, overturning and lateral stability, integrity deficiencies have been corrected, settlements will not affect the functionality of the structure, and that the inspection of the drilled shaft installation was performed under the supervision of the GFDEOR. Include all shaft excavation and concreting logs, videos of visual shaft bottom inspections, all TITDS and CSL reports and electronic data, gamma-gamma testing reports, slurry test data, supplemental testing data, analyses for the foundation unit and the concrete strength test results of the lots sampled. The certification shall not be contingent on any future repair or testing, or any approval by the Engineer. Submit a separate Foundation Certification Package for each foundation unit. A foundation unit is defined as all the shafts within one bent or pier for a specific bridge for each phase of construction. For sign, signal, lighting and ITS structures, a foundation unit is defined as all the shafts within one intersection/interchange, for each phase of an intersection/interchange or all the shafts included in the structure.

**455-22.3 Verification:** The Engineer reserves the right to observe and perform verification testing on any drilled shafts during any phases of the foundation operation.

Provide safe access and cooperate with the Engineer for verification of the drilled shafts, both during construction of shafts and after submittal of the certification package. The Engineer may verify the bottom cleanliness by over the shoulder review of the Contractor's visual inspection methods and/or by independent means. The Engineer may verify properties of drilling fluid at the time of concreting.

Within one working day, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, of receipt of the Foundation Certification Package, the Engineer will examine the Certification Package and determine whether shafts in that foundation unit will be selected for Verification Testing. The Engineer may select every shaft for Verification Testing if defects are suspected, or choose not to require verification testing on any or all foundation units. The Engineer will provide equipment and personnel as needed for Verification Testing. Methods used for Verification Testing of a completed shaft are at the discretion of the Engineer and may include coring, cross-hole sonic logging, gamma-gamma density logging, low-strain dynamic integrity testing, or other methods.

After Verification Testing for a foundation unit is performed, the Engineer will provide the results within five working days, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays. Integrity testing access tubes shall not be grouted and construction of footings, caps, columns or any superstructure elements shall not occur until the Engineer has notified the Contractor that additional Verification Testing is not required.

If any shaft is found to be deficient, correct the deficiency (i.e. repair or replace the shaft) and/or modify the design to compensate for the deficiency. After the deficiency is corrected, retest and recertify the shaft. The Engineer may then perform additional Verification Testing. In case of disagreement of test results, the Engineer's results will be final and used for determination of acceptance.

ARTICLE 455-23 is deleted:

#### **455-24 Basis of Payment.**

Contract Price includes all labor, equipment and materials required for furnishing, installing, and certifying drill shaft foundations, in place and accepted. No separate payment will be made for any items of work associated with construction of drill shaft foundations.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

## D. SPREAD FOOTINGS

### 455-25 Description.

Construct reinforced concrete spread footing foundations, including dewatering when necessary, excavating to the required limits, compacting the underlying soil as required, and constructing seals when required.

### 455-26 General Requirements.

Meet the following requirements for all spread footings:

1. Perform excavations, including the removal of all material, of whatever nature, necessary for the construction of spread footings. As used herein, the term "soil" shall constitute any material, whether soil, rock, or other materials.
2. Slope excavations as required, or support them with sheeting, and shore them if necessary, to provide a safe excavation that is adequate for construction purposes and that will adequately protect any existing adjacent structures.
3. Ensure that the foundation soils are firm, stable, and meet or exceed the design bearing and compressibility requirements before constructing the footings or any required seals. The Department may elect to use any type of tests to evaluate the foundation soils that is appropriate in the opinion of the Engineer. Cooperate with the Engineer in the evaluation of the foundation soils, and assist the Engineer as necessary to provide access to the site.
4. Modify the elevation of the bottom of footings or seals and the depth of over-excavation shown in the Plans as may be necessary to secure a satisfactory foundation.
5. Place all spread footing concrete in the dry.

Provide safe access and cooperate with the Engineer to perform verification of the spread footing construction.

#### 455-26.1 Foundation Certification Packages:

Submit two copies of a letter signed and sealed by the GFDEOR to the Engineer certifying each spread footing has the required axial, lateral and torsional capacity, overturning stability and integrity; and settlement will not affect the functionality of the structure. A separate Foundation Certification Package must be submitted for each foundation unit. A foundation unit is defined as a spread footing. Spread footings must be certified and the certification accepted before continuing with the construction of any structural element above the foundation unit. Correct all integrity problems and non compliance issues prior to submitting the certification packages. The certification shall not be contingent on any future repair or testing, or any approval by the Engineer.

Within one working day, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, after receipt of the Foundation Certification Package, the Engineer will examine the records and determine the acceptability of the shallow foundation.

### 455-27 Monitor Existing Structures.

Monitor existing structures in accordance with Section 108.

### 455-28 Dewatering.

The Contractor is responsible for the design, installation, and operation of an adequate dewatering system to dewater excavations for spread footings. Use a well point or well system. Submit a dewatering plan to the Engineer for his records before beginning construction.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

Use well points or wells where the piezometric water level is above an elevation 3 feet below the bottom of the excavation. Maintain the water table 3 feet or more below the maximum depth of excavation. Provide continuous dewatering until completing construction of the footing and backfill the excavation at least 3 feet above the piezometric water table elevation. In the event of a dewatering failure, determine the effects of such a failure on the foundation soils, and take whatever corrective measures are required at no additional expense to the Department. When discontinuing dewatering, decrease the rate of pumping, allowing the water level to rise slowly. Use a rate, in feet per hour, that the water table is allowed to rise equal to the total number of feet the water table was lowered, divided by ten hours or a rate of 1 foot per hour, whichever is less.

Install one piezometer well approximately every 15 feet of footing perimeter. Provide a minimum of two piezometers at locations within 2 feet from the outside of the footing perimeter. Install piezometer wells to a depth at least 10 feet below the bottom of footing elevation. Measure water elevation in the piezometer wells prior to excavation and at 12-hour intervals between excavation and discontinuation of dewatering. Maintain the piezometers in working condition throughout the dewatering process, and repair or replace them when damaged at no expense to the Department.

#### **455-29 Excavations**

If the excavation must be carried deeper than shown in the Plans to obtain a satisfactory foundation, revise the Plans.

**455-29.1 Dry Excavations:** Dry excavations are excavations that can be completed without the need to lower the piezometric water level. Perform dry excavations when the piezometric water level at the time of construction is and, in the opinion of the Engineer, will remain at least 3 feet below the bottom of the authorized excavation or over-excavation. Demonstrate to the Engineer that a stable excavation can be made without dewatering. Make adequate provisions to divert surface runoff and to collect and remove any water entering the excavation.

Excavate to the bottom of footing, to the over-excavation limits shown in the Plans or as required for forming. Save any suitable materials for backfill. Provide areas for the disposal of all unsuitable materials, and dispose of them in a satisfactory method. Compact the foundation soils below the footing as described herein before constructing the footing.

**455-29.2 Dewatered Excavations:** Dewatered excavations are excavations made after first lowering the piezometric water level with wellpoints or wells. Perform dewatering as described in 455-28. Excavate in the dry after lowering of the water table.

When dewatering is required, the Contractor may excavate within 3 feet of the ground water table before dewatering begins if the dewatering system is operating and the Contractor has demonstrated that the water level has been lowered to and maintained at acceptable limits. Where large excavations require stage lowering of the water table (additional wellpoint systems installed at lower elevations), the Contractor may continue excavating as long as the water elevation is maintained at least 3 feet below the excavation.

Ensure that surface runoff is diverted from the excavation. Compact the foundation soils as shown in the Plans or as described herein before constructing the footing.

**455-29.3 Wet Excavations:** Wet excavations are excavations made below the existing water table without prior dewatering. When the Plans show a cofferdam and seal, perform the



Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

excavation in the wet. Maintain the water level during excavation at or above the water level outside the cofferdam.

Place the seal directly upon the foundation soils or rock when using wet excavations. Do not compact foundation soils for wet excavations. Ensure that the foundation soils or rock are disturbed as little as practical. Remove all loose or disturbed materials before placing the seal concrete.

#### **455-30 Fill or Backfill.**

In all excavations, including over-excavations below the footing, use only fill or backfill materials considered Select in accordance with Standard Plans, Index 120-001. Ensure the material is free of rubble, debris, or rocks that would prevent uniform placement and compaction. Ensure the material below the top of the footing is free of Recycled Asphalt Pavement (RAP). Perform sampling and testing in accordance with 120-10.1.4, except replace FM 1-T99 with FM 1-T180.

#### **455-31 Compaction and Density Requirements.**

Compact the bottom of the excavation with suitable equipment. Compact the soil beneath footing excavation (whether dug to the bottom of footing or over-excavated) to a density not less than 95% of the maximum density as determined by FM 1-T180 for a minimum depth of 2 feet below the bottom of the excavation or to the depth shown in the Plans before backfilling begins. For every 500 feet of excavation or isolated compaction operation, perform two Quality Control (QC) density tests with a 12 inch depth of measurement: one QC density test with the gauge placed at an elevation of 1 foot below the bottom of the excavation and one QC density test with the gauge placed at the bottom of the excavation in accordance with FM 1-T238. Compact the backfill in footing excavations which have been over-excavated to a density not less than 95% of the maximum density as determined by FM 1-T180. Ensure that the maximum lift thickness after compaction does not exceed 6 inches. For every 500 feet of backfill or isolated compaction operation, perform at least one QC density test. The Engineer will conduct one density verification test per every four QC test with a minimum of one density test below the bottom of the excavation and one density test in the backfill. Verification comparison criteria and resolution procedures will be in accordance with 120-10.4 except replace FM 1-T99, with FM 1-T180.

For compaction, use a suitable heavy vibratory roller with a static drum weight of at least 4 tons. Compact each lift to the required density. Also, compact the final lift below the footing with a suitable sled vibratory compactor to remove any upper disturbance caused by the drum roller. When conditions require use of smaller compaction equipment, obtain the Engineer's acceptance for the equipment, and reduce the lift thickness to achieve the required density.

Perform backfilling to the existing surface or finished graded surface, as required by the Plans in the immediate vicinity by suitable mechanical compactors weighing less than 1,000 pounds. The Contractor may compact backfill located more than 15 feet away from the exterior periphery of the footing with heavier compactors. Do not place backfill on the footing until the Engineer has given permission and until the concrete is at least seven days old.

When the plans indicate spread footing abutments on mechanically stabilized earth (MSE) walls, place and compact the backfill material underneath the footing in accordance with the requirements of 548-8.5. Meet the density requirements of 548-9.4.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

**455-32 Forming.**

Form spread footings if it cannot be demonstrated that the natural soil or rock is strong enough to prevent caving during construction. For forms, meet the applicable requirements of 400-5. When forms are not required, meet the requirements of 400-5.4.4.

**455-33 Materials.**

**455-33.1 Concrete:** Meet the requirements of Section 346.

**455-33.2 Reinforcing Steel:** Meet the requirements of Section 415. For spread footing reinforcing steel, use Grade 60.

**455-34 Reinforcing Steel Placement.**

Place and fasten reinforcing steel for footings according to the applicable provisions of 415-5.

**455-35 Concrete Placement.**

**455-35.1 Placement:** Place all footing concrete in the dry and according to the applicable provisions of Section 400. Do not construct joints in footings.

**455-35.2 Finish:** After placing and consolidating the concrete, strike-off the top surface to the grades shown in the Contract Documents, leaving the surface smooth and free of undesirable cavities and other defects. Do not provide a special finish unless the footing will be visible after construction, in which case, meet the applicable provisions of Section 400.

**455-35.3 Curing:** Provide continuous-moisture-curing for footings. For cover materials, use clean sand, sawdust, or other materials accepted by the Engineer. Continuously wet the cover materials for a period of 72 hours.

ARTICLE 455-36 is deleted:

**455-37 Basis of Payment.**

Contract Price includes all labor, equipment and materials required for furnishing, installing, and certifying the completed foundations, in place and accepted. No separate payment will be made for any items of work associated with spread footing construction.

**E. STRUCTURES (OTHER THAN BRIDGE)  
FOUNDATIONS-AUGER CAST PILES**

**455-38 Description.**

Furnish and install auger cast piles (ACP) or augered cast-in-place (ACIP) piles used for structural support, other than bridge foundations.

ACP piles are defined as a foundation made by rotating a hollow-stem auger into the ground to the required pile depth with sufficient crowd (downward thrust) to prevent mining of the soil. A fluid cement grout is injected through the auger shaft under continuous positive pressure as the auger is being withdrawn. A reinforcing steel cage, as specified, is inserted into the column of fluid grout following the completion of grout placement.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

#### **455-39 General Requirements.**

**455-39.1 Contractor's Operations:** Submit an Auger Cast Pile Installation Plan in accordance with 455-47. Prior to the start of production piles, demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Engineer, the dependability of the equipment, techniques, and source of materials by construction of a demonstration pile.

Provide safe access and cooperate with the Engineer to perform verification of the auger cast pile installation.

**455-39.2 Monitor Existing Structures:** Monitor existing structures in accordance with Section 108.

#### **455-40 Materials.**

Meet the following material requirements:

Portland Cement and Blended Cement .....	Section 921
Supplementary Cementitious Materials .....	Section 929
Fine Aggregate (Sand)* .....	Section 902
Admixtures.....	Section 924
Water.....	Section 923
Fluidifier** .....	ASTM C 937
Reinforcing Steel.....	Section 415

\* The Engineer will only permit Silica Sand except as provided in 902-5.2.3.

\*\* The fluidifier shall not contain chlorides.

#### **455-41 Grout Mix Proportions.**

Use a grout mix consisting of a mixture of cementitious materials, admixtures, sand and water. Proportion and mix to produce a grout capable of maintaining the solids in suspension without appreciable bleed water which may be pumped without difficulty and fill open voids in the adjacent soils and rock. The grout mix may include a fluidifier used in accordance with the manufacturer's technical representative. Proportion these materials to produce a hardened grout of the required strength.

#### **455-42 Mixing and Pumping Cement Grout.**

Meet the following requirements:

1. Only use pumping equipment accepted by the Engineer in the preparation and handling of the grout. Before using the mixers, remove all oil or other rust inhibitors from the mixing drums, stirring mechanisms, and other portions of the equipment in contact with the grout.

2. Use a quantity of water and mixing time that will produce a homogenous grout having an efflux of not less than 21 seconds, when tested with a flow cone in accordance with ASTM D6449. Reject loads with efflux of less than 21 seconds. Notify the production facility to adjust the mix design. Calibrate the flow cone in accordance with ASTM D6449. Conduct the calibration initially before its first use and as directed by the Engineer, when there is a question of the flow cone's accuracy.

Technicians performing the efflux test must take the Auger Cast Pile course and pass the final examination to be qualified to test for any auger cast pile installations in the field. Assist the Engineer in verifying the technicians meet these requirements.

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

Conduct test for efflux time at the beginning of each day's grouting operation and as directed by the Engineer to ensure the Specification requirements are met.

3. Mix the grout at least one minute. If agitated continuously, the grout may be held in the mixer or agitator for a period not exceeding 2.5 hours at grout temperatures below 70°F; two hours for temperatures from 70°F to 100°F. Do not place grout when its temperature exceeds 100°F. If there is a lapse in the operation of grout injection, recirculate the grout through the pump, or through the mixer drum or agitator.

4. Use mixers capable of combining components into a thoroughly mixed and uniform mass, free from balls or lumps and capable of discharging the grout with a satisfactory degree of uniformity. The Engineer's acceptance of grout mixers and all other equipment will be contingent on proper performance during construction of the demonstration pile and subsequent production work.

5. Use a screen no larger than 3/4 inch mesh between the mixer and pump to remove large particles which might clog the injection system.

6. Use a positive displacement piston type grout pump equipped with a pressure gauge, capable of developing displacing pressures at the pump not less than 350 psi. The pump must be appropriately sized to the pile diameter. Provide a grout pressure gage in clear view of the equipment operator. Provide a second pressure gauge near the drill rig where it can be observed by the Engineer.

7. Accurately monitor the volume and pressure of the grout flow. Provide a pump stroke counter in good working condition on the grout pump. Perform a calibration test of the pumping equipment, prior to construction of the demonstration piles, to determine the average volume of grout for every pump stroke, in accordance with FM 5-612. When the Contractor's installation procedure includes priming the grout pump, grouting lines or auger conduit after drilling the hole, perform a priming demonstration to determine the minimum number of pump strokes required to deliver fresh grout throughout the entire system and flow from the grout injection hole at the bottom of the auger. Perform this grout priming demonstration prior to any calibration test.

The Engineer may require additional pump calibrations and priming demonstrations when the pump is repaired, a different pump is used, when the length of the grout lines or hollow auger lengths increase from previous piles for which priming demonstrations were performed and at any time the Engineer determines the grout pump performance may have changed.

#### **455-43 Testing Cement Grout.**

Prepare three 4 inches x 8 inches cylinders for each LOT in accordance with ASTM C31, except pour grout in a single lift into cylinders molds without rodding. Plastic properties in accordance with ASTM C31 are not required. A LOT is defined as the lesser of 50 cubic yards of cement grout placed or one day of pile placement. Prepare three additional QC "hold" cylinders on the LOT selected by the Engineer for Verification. Provide curing facilities for all QC and Verification test cylinders in accordance with ASTM C31. Test the cylinders at 28 days, in accordance with ASTM C39.

When one of the three QC cylinders from a LOT is lost, missing, damaged or destroyed, determination of compressive strength will be made by averaging the remaining two cylinders. If more than one QC cylinder from a LOT is lost, missing, damaged or destroyed, core the structure at no additional expense to the Department to determine the compressive strength. Acceptance of LOT may be based on verification data at the discretion of the Engineer. Obtain the approval of

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

the Engineer to core, and of the core location prior to coring. Repair core holes after samples are taken with a product meeting the approval of the Engineer, at no additional cost to the Department.

For each QC cylinder that is lost, missing, damaged or destroyed, payment for that LOT will be reduced by \$750.00 per 1,000 psi of the specified design strength [Example: For  $f'_c=5,500$  psi, and the loss of two auger cast pile grout QC cylinders that have no verification data will require the element to be cored and a pay reduction will be assessed  $(5,500 \text{ psi} / 1,000 \text{ psi}) \times \$750 \times 2 = \$8,250$ ]. This reduction will be in addition to any pay adjustment for low strength.

The Engineer will cast three verification cylinders and three “hold” cylinders from one of every four consecutive Lots, randomly selected. The Engineer will compare QC and Verification results in accordance with Section 346. If the results do not compare, the Engineer will initiate a Resolution Investigation in accordance with Section 346

Personnel making/curing grout cylinders shall be certified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician Grade I. Personnel performing tests on hardened properties of grout, such as strength determination of cylinders or beams, shall be certified as ACI Concrete Strength Testing Technician.

All low strength cement grout accepted by the Engineer will be subject to reduced payment as follows: \$0.80 per cubic yard for each 10 psi of strength test value below the specified minimum strength. The Engineer will use the average compressive strength of the LOT tests for the computation of this pay reduction.

The Engineer will compute the volume of grout for which the reduction will be applied as 115% of the theoretical volume of the auger cast pile diameter required in the Contract Documents. Reduction in pay will be applied to the entire length of all piles containing low strength cement grout, in any quantity. The quantity of cement grout affected by the payment reduction may exceed the quantity of cement grout contained in the LOT.

When a cement grout acceptance strength test falls more than 500 psi below the specified minimum strength, perform one of the following:

1. Remove and replace the piles affected fully or partially by the low strength LOT at no additional cost to the Department, or
2. Submit a structural analysis performed by the Contractor’s Engineer of Record. If the results of the analysis, approved by the Department, indicate adequate strength to serve the intended purpose with adequate durability, the concrete may remain in place.

Otherwise, abandon and install additional piles to the foundation, or remove and replace the piles affected fully or partially by the low strength LOT of grout at no additional cost to the Department. When installing additional piles to resolve the strength deficiency, submit a foundation redesign to add piles into pile caps or footings, at no expense to the Department in accordance with 455-46.

#### **455-44 Pile Installation.**

Meet the following requirements:

1. Locate the piles as shown on the drawings.
2. Should soft, compressible muck, organics, clay or other unsuitable materials (non A-1, A-3, A-2-4 or limestone materials) be encountered, remove the unsuitable material to a maximum depth of 5 feet and a radial distance around the pile centerline of two pile diameters unless otherwise indicated in the Plans. Backfill with clean granular backfill materials (A-1, A-3,

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

A-2-4), placed and compacted in maximum 12 inch lifts to at least 95% of maximum dry density as determined by FM 1-T180. Complete this work to the Engineer's satisfaction prior to ACP construction. Should more than 5 feet depth or excessive quantities of unsuitable material be encountered, submit a revised design to the Engineer for review and acceptance prior to proceeding with pile construction.

3. Provide continuous auger flighting from the bottom of the pile to the top of ground at the time of drilling with no gaps or other breaks except for connections. Ensure the auger flights are uniform in diameter throughout its length, and of the diameter specified for the piles less a maximum of 3%. Provide augers with a distance between flights of approximately half the diameter of the auger.

4. Use augers with the grout injection hole located at the bottom of the auger tip below the cutting teeth, and with pile auger leads containing a bottom guide.

5. Construct piles of the length and diameter shown on the Plans.

6. Clearly mark the auger leads to facilitate monitoring of the incremental drilling and grout placement. Provide individual foot marks with 5 foot increments highlighted and clearly visible. Provide a clear reference mark on the moving auger assembly to facilitate accurately monitoring the vertical movement of the auger.

7. Place piles by rotating a continuous flight hollow shaft auger into the ground at a continuous rate that prevents removal of excess soil. Stop advancement after reaching the predetermined depth.

8. Should auger penetration to the required depth prove difficult due to hard materials/refusal, the pile location may be predrilled, upon concurrence by the GFDEOR and acceptance of the Engineer, through the obstruction using appropriate drilling equipment, to a diameter no larger than 1/2 the prescribed finish diameter of the ACP. Commence ACP grouting immediately upon reaching the required tip elevation to minimize ground loss and soil relaxation.

9. Plug the injection hole at the bottom of the auger prior to advancing into the ground.

10. Pump the grout with sufficient pressure as the auger is withdrawn to completely fill the auger hole, preventing hole collapse and to cause the lateral penetration of the grout into soft or porous zones of the surrounding soil or rock. Prior to commencing withdrawal of the auger, establish a head of at least 5 feet of grout by pumping a volume of grout equivalent to 5 feet of pile volume. Do not include the volume or strokes required to prime the grout pumping system in the volume required to build this initial head. Maintain this head of at least 5 feet of grout above the injection point around the perimeter of the auger to displace and remove any loose material from the hole. Maintain positive rotation of the auger at least until placement of the grout.

11. Once the grout head has been established, greatly reduce the speed of rotation of the auger and commence extraction at a rate consistent with the pump discharge. Maintain extraction at a steady rate to prevent a locked-in auger, necking of the pile, or a substantially reduced pile section. Ensure grout starts flowing out from the hole when the cutting head is at least 5 feet below the ground surface. Place a minimum volume of grout in the hole of at least 115% of the column of the auger hole from a depth of 5 feet to the tip. Place a minimum volume of grout in the hole of at least 105% of the column of the auger hole from the ground surface to a depth of 5 feet. Do not include any grout needed to create surplus grout head in the volume of grout placed into the hole. If the grout does not flow out from the hole when the cutting head is

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

at least 5 feet below the ground surface, redrill the pile. If grouting is interrupted for any reason, reinsert the auger by drilling at least 5 feet below the tip of the auger when the interruption occurred, and then regrout.

Use this method of placement at all times. Do not depend on the stability of the hole without the earth filled auger.

12. Assume responsibility for the grout volume placed. If less than 115% of the theoretical volume of grout is placed in any 5 foot increment (100% in the top 5 foot increment), redrill 10 feet below that increment, or to the tip of the pile, whichever is less and resume pumping, followed by controlled removal and grout injection.

13. Furnish and install the reinforcing steel and anchoring bolts as shown in the Contract Documents. For ACP for miscellaneous structures and low clearance post options for noise walls, use wheels or other approved noncorrosive spacing devices within 3 feet of the bottom, within 3 feet of the top, and intervals not exceeding 10 feet along the pile to ensure concentric spacing for the entire length of the cage. Do not use block or wire type spacers. Use a minimum of one spacer per 30 inches of circumference or perimeter of cage with a minimum of three at each level. For noise wall ACP in which the full reinforcement is attached to the post, spacing devices within 3 ft of the top of the pile are not required.

14. Use reinforcement that is without kinks or nonspecified bends, free of mud, oil or other coatings that could adversely affect the bond. Make splices in reinforcement as shown on the Contract Documents, unless otherwise accepted by the Engineer. Place the required steel reinforcement while the grout is still fluid, and immediately after finishing grouting and clearing it from any contaminating material. Install the steel cage into the grout by its own weight or manually. Do not use a mechanical equipment or tool to impact the steel cage or to force it into the grout. If the steel cage cannot be placed completely following this procedure, remove the cage, redrill and regrout the pile.

15. Leave any temporary supports of/for items placed into a grouted pile (reinforcement template, anchor bolt template, precast column supports, etc.) in place for a minimum of 12 hours after completion of the pile. Do not place wall panels or other significant loads, before the grout has set a minimum of seven days or reached the 28-day strength.

#### **455-45 Construction Tolerances.**

Locate piles as shown on the Plans. Locate pile centers to an accuracy of plus or minus 3 inches. Ensure that the top of pile elevation is within plus or minus 3 inches of the Plan elevation. Ensure the tolerances of 534-5.1 can be met.

#### **455-46 Unacceptable Piles.**

Repair or replace unacceptable piles and/or modify the design to compensate for the deficiency at no cost to the Department. Unacceptable piles are defined as piles that fail for any reason, including but not limited to the following: piles placed out of position or to improper elevation; piles with reduced cross section, contaminated grout, lack of grout consolidation (honeycombed), or deficient grout strength; and piles with reinforcement, anchor devices or other components cast or placed into the fluid grout out of position. When the Engineer determines that a pile is unacceptable, the Contractor may propose a foundation redesign to add piles to the foundation, at no expense to the Department. The Contractor's Engineer of Record must perform any redesign, and sign and seal the redesign drawings and calculations. Do not

Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

begin any proposed construction until the redesign has been reviewed and approved by the Engineer.

#### **455-47 Auger Cast Pile Installation Plan (ACPIP).**

No later than 15 days before ACP construction begins, submit the ACPIP for acceptance by the Engineer. The ACPIP shall govern all ACP construction activities. In the event that deviations from this installation plan are observed, the Department may perform Independent Verification Testing/Review of the Contractor's equipment, procedures, personnel and ACP construction at any time during ACP construction. If, as determined by the Department, construction equipment, procedures and/or personnel is deemed inadequate to consistently provide auger cast piles meeting the contract requirements, the Contractor's ACPIP acceptance may be withdrawn pending corrective actions. All ACP construction activities shall then cease and not restart until corrective actions have been taken and the ACPIP has been re-accepted.

Provide the following detailed information on the ACPIP:

1. Name and experience record of ACP superintendent or foreman in responsible charge of ACP operations. Place a person in responsible charge of day to day ACP operations meeting the experience requirements of 105-8.13 constructing ACP similar to those described in the Contract Documents. The Engineer will give final acceptance subject to satisfactory performance in the field.
2. List and size of the proposed equipment, including cranes, augers, concrete pumps, mixing equipment etc.
3. Details of grout mixing procedures and proposed pump calibration procedures.
4. Details of pile installation methods.
5. Details of reinforcement placement and method of centering in pile, including details of all temporary supports for reinforcement, anchor bolts, precast columns, etc.
6. Details of how and by whom the grout volumes will be determined, monitored and documented.
7. Required submittals, including shop drawings and cement grout design mixes.
8. Equipment and procedures for visual inspection, and any methods to identify and remediate auger cast pile deficiencies.
9. Name of the inspectors assigned to monitor the installation of the auger cast piles, including evidence of the inspectors having taken and passed the CTQP computer based training course for auger cast piles.
10. Other information requested by the Engineer.
11. A letter from the GFDEOR certifying concurrence with the ACPIP.

The Engineer will evaluate the ACPIP for conformance with the Contract Documents. Within five working days after receipt of the plan, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, the Engineer will notify the Contractor of any comments and additional information required and/or changes that may be necessary to satisfy the Contract Documents. The Engineer will reject any part of the plan that is unacceptable. Submit changes agreed upon for reevaluation. The Engineer will notify the Contractor within two working days, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, after receipt of proposed changes of their acceptance or rejection. All equipment and procedures are subject to trial and satisfactory performance in the field. Acceptance by the Engineer does not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to perform the work in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Engineer's



Use when requested and approved by the District Construction Engineer.

acceptance is not a guarantee that the chosen methods and equipment are capable of obtaining the required results, this responsibility lies with the Contractor.

#### **455-48 Inspection and Records.**

Monitor and record pile installation utilizing the most recent version of the Department Auger Cast-In-Place Pile Installation Record form.

ARTICLE 455-49 is deleted:

#### **455-50 Basis of Payment.**

Contract Price includes cost of all labor, equipment and materials required for furnishing, installing, and certifying the completed auger cast pile foundations, in place and accepted. No separate payment will be made for any items of work associated with auger cast pile construction.

#### **455-51 Foundation Certification Packages**

Submit two copies of a letter signed and sealed by the GFDEOR to the Engineer certifying each foundation unit has the required axial capacity, lateral stability and integrity, settlements will not affect the functionality of the structure, and that the inspection of the auger cast pile installation was performed under the supervision of the GFDEOR. A separate Foundation Certification Package must be submitted for each foundation unit. The foundation unit is defined as a group of piles per wall segment or per full wall. Every ACP must be certified and the certification accepted before continuing with the construction of any structural element over the foundation unit. Each Foundation Certification Package shall include all ACP logs, the Department spreadsheet properly completed for every ACP and the grout strength test results of the lots sampled. Correct all integrity problems and noncompliance issues prior to submitting the certification packages. The certification shall not be contingent on any future repair or testing, or any approval by the Engineer. Within three working days, excluding weekends and Department observed holidays, after receipt of the Foundation Certification Package, the Engineer will examine the records and determine the acceptability of the auger cast piles. The Engineer will reject any certification package that is incomplete or indicates noncompliance with the specifications without the issue being corrected to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

If any ACP is found to be deficient, correct the deficiency (i.e. repair or replace the ACP) and/or modify the design to compensate for the deficiency. In case of disagreement of test results, the Engineer's results will be final and used for determination of acceptance.

After meeting the time requirements of 455-44(15), the Contractor may place panels prior to a complete submittal of the Certification Package at their own risk. If the Engineer determines that verification testing is needed, the Contractor will perform all work and provide all labor, at no additional cost to the Department, necessary to allow access to the piles requiring verification. Replace or redesign and reconstruct, to the satisfaction of the Engineer, any foundation found to be unacceptable after submittal of the certification packages or after verification testing, at no cost to the Department.